

UC-NRLF



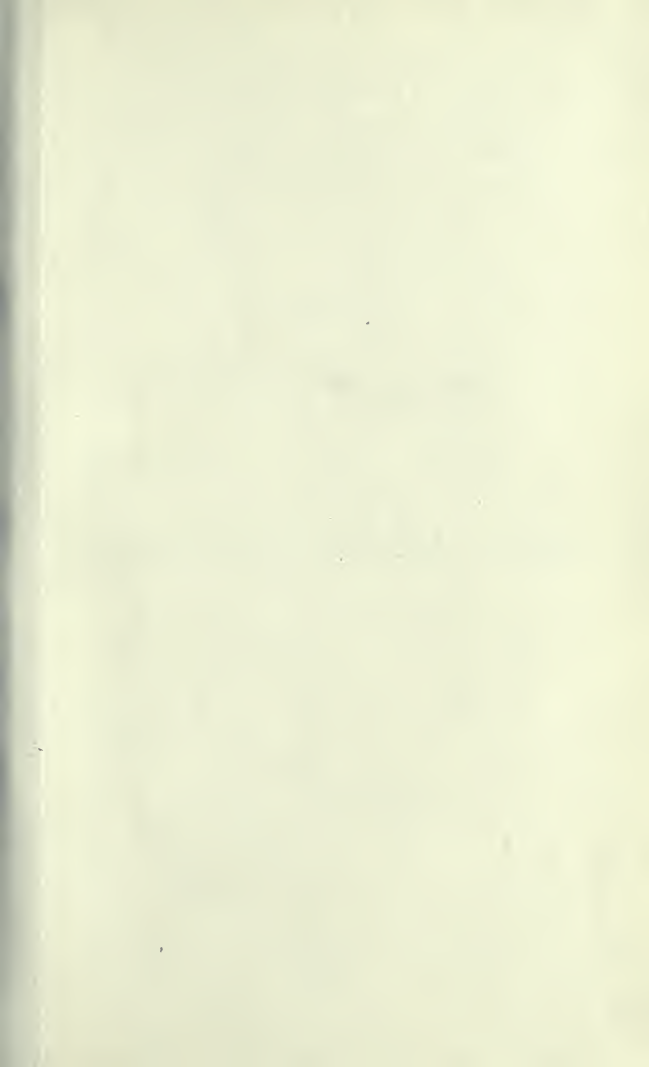
\$B 624 136













Digitized by the Internet Archive  
in 2008 with funding from  
Microsoft Corporation

ELEMENTARY LESSONS  
IN  
HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR.



ELEMENTARY LESSONS  
IN  
HISTORICAL  
ENGLISH GRAMMAR

CONTAINING

*Accidence and Word-Formation.*

BY THE  
REV. RICHARD MORRIS, LL.D.,

HONORARY M.A. OXFORD,  
PRESIDENT OF THE PHILOLOGICAL SOCIETY, LONDON,

*Author of "Historical Outlines of English Accidence,"*  
*Editor of "Old English Homilies," "Cursor Mundi," etc.*

NEW EDITION.

London:  
MACMILLAN AND CO.

1878.

LONDON:  
R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,  
BREAD STREET HILL, E.C.



890

M877

1878

## P R E F A C E.

THE present treatise has been drawn up at the urgent request of numerous teachers, who asked for an easier and more elementary work than my "Historical Outlines of English Accidence," published some two years ago. I have endeavoured to the best of my ability to produce a short historical grammar that might be advantageously used as an introduction to my larger book.

I have not, however, made a new book by cutting down and compressing the old one. These "Elementary Lessons" constitute an entirely indepen-

dent work, with many peculiarities of arrangement that at once distinguish it from the "Accidence." A reference to the earlier chapters alone will at once show how very different the two books are. The illustrative examples scattered throughout the present work are for the most part new, very few of them having been quoted elsewhere.

I trust that, to those engaged in the higher education of boys and girls, these lessons will prove helpful in promoting a more thorough knowledge of our "mother tongue," the study of which has of late years been put on a better footing, and has acquired a distinct, and by no means an unimportant, place in the curriculum of a liberal education.

Syntax is not treated of in this volume, but I hope before long to be able to get out both a small and a large book on this important subject.



---

My best thanks are due to my kind friend, the Rev. W. W. Skeat, for his assistance in revising the proof-sheets. At his suggestion I have adopted the classification of the periods of the Language on p. 33, and the mnemonics on p. 48.

KING'S COLLEGE,  
*July* 1874.

## CONTRACTIONS.

- Allit. = Alliterative.  
Anat. Mel. = Anatomy of Melancholy  
C.T. = Canterbury Tales.  
Dan. = Danish.  
De Reg. = De Regimine Principum.  
C. Mundi. = Cursor Mundi ;  
    C. = Cotton MS.  
    F. = Fairfax MS.  
    G. = Göttingen MS.  
    T. = Trinity MS.  
E.E. = Early English.  
Fr. = French.  
Ger. = German.  
Gest. Rom. = Gesta Romanorum.  
Gr. = Greek.  
Icel. = Icelandic.  
Kath. = St. Katherine.  
Lat. = Latin.  
M.E. = Middle English.  
N.Fr. = Norman-French.  
O.E. = Old English.  
O.E. Misc. = O.E. Miscellany.  
O.E. Hom. = Old English Homilies.  
O.Fr. = Old French.  
O.H. Ger. = Old High German.  
P. of C. = Pricke of Conscience.  
P. of Pl. = Pastime of Pleasure.  
Pol. Rel. = Political, Religious.  
T.E. = Tudor English.



## CONTENTS.

### CHAPTER I.

	PAGE
Relation of English to the Languages of Europe and Asia	1
Table of Indo-European Languages . . . . .	3
Relation of English to the Teutonic Group . . . . .	4
Table of Teutonic Languages . . . . .	5

### CHAPTER II.

History of the English Language . . . . .	6
Origin of the English . . . . .	6
Foreign Elements in English . . . . .	7
The Keltic Element in English . . . . .	7
The Scandinavian Element in English . . . . .	8
The Latin Element in English . . . . .	10
Latin introduced by Norman French . . . . .	12
Influence of Norman-French upon the Vocabulary of the English Language . . . . .	13
Influence of Norman-French upon the Grammar of English	16
Latin introduced by the revival of learning . . . . .	21
Other Foreign elements . . . . .	24
Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign elements .	27

### CHAPTER III.

Early English Dialects . . . . .	31
Periods of the Language . . . . .	33

## CHAPTER IV.

	PAGE
Sounds and Letters . . . . .	35
Classification of Consonants . . . . .	37
Number of Elementary Sounds in the English Alphabet .	39
Imperfections of the English Alphabet . . . . .	40

## CHAPTER V.

Permutation of Sounds . . . . .	42
Grimm's Law . . . . .	46

## CHAPTER VI.

Etymology . . . . .	53
Parts of Speech . . . . .	53

## CHAPTER VII.

Nouns . . . . .	61
Gender . . . . .	61
Number . . . . .	70
Case . . . . .	78
Declension of Old English Nouns . . . . .	83

## CHAPTER VIII.

Adjectives . . . . .	87
Declension of O.E. Adjectives . . . . .	89
Comparison . . . . .	90
Irregular Comparisons . . . . .	92
Numerals . . . . .	96

## CHAPTER IX.

Pronouns . . . . .	101
Personal Pronouns . . . . .	102
Reflexive Pronouns . . . . .	110
Adjective Pronouns . . . . .	112

	PAGE
Independent or Absolute Possessives . . . . .	114
Demonstrative Pronouns . . . . .	114
Interrogative Pronouns . . . . .	118
Relative Pronouns . . . . .	120
Indefinite Pronouns . . . . .	122

## CHAPTER X.

The Verb . . . . .	129
Voice . . . . .	130
Mood . . . . .	131
Verbal Nouns . . . . .	133
Tense . . . . .	134
Number. . . . .	136
Conjugation . . . . .	136
Strong Verbs . . . . .	137
Weak Verbs . . . . .	153
Verbal Inflexions . . . . .	159
Infinitive Mood . . . . .	164
Participles . . . . .	166
Anomalous Verbs . . . . .	167
Auxiliary Verbs . . . . .	185

## CHAPTER XI.

Adverbs . . . . .	187
Adverbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives . . . . .	187
Pronominal Adverbs. . . . .	190
Adverbs formed from Prepositions . . . . .	193
Compound Adverbs. . . . .	193

## CHAPTER XII.

Prepositions . . . . .	195
Simple Preposition . . . . .	195

	PAGE
Compound Prepositions . . . . .	196
Comparatives . . . . .	196
Prepositions compounded with Prepositions . . . . .	196
Prepositions formed from Nouns . . . . .	197
Prepositions formed from Adjectives . . . . .	197
Verbal Prepositions . . . . .	199

## CHAPTER XIII.

Conjunctions . . . . .	200
Pronominal Conjunctions . . . . .	200
Verbal Conjunctions. . . . .	202

## CHAPTER XIV.

Interjections . . . . .	203
-------------------------	-----

## CHAPTER XV.

Derivation and Word Formation . . . . .	204
Noun Suffixes from Demonstrative Roots . . . . .	204
Adjective Suffixes from Demonstrative Roots . . . . .	208
Noun Suffixes from Predicative Roots . . . . .	209
Adjective Suffixes from Predicative Roots . . . . .	212
Adverbial Suffixes . . . . .	213
Verbal Suffixes . . . . .	214
Composition . . . . .	215
Noun-Compounds . . . . .	215
Adjective-Compounds . . . . .	216
Verbal-Compounds . . . . .	217
Composition with Particles of English Origin . . . . .	217
Inseparable Particles . . . . .	217
Separable Particles. . . . .	221
Suffixes of Romanic Origin . . . . .	223
Composition with Romanic Particles . . . . .	236
Composition with Greek Particles . . . . .	243
APPENDIX . . . . .	247
INDEX . . . . .	249

# ELEMENTARY LESSONS

IN

## HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR

### CHAPTER I.

#### I.—Relation of English to the Languages of Europe and Asia.

##### ENGLISH BELONGS TO THE INDO-EUROPEAN FAMILY OF LANGUAGES.

1. Most of the nations of Europe, and some in Asia, (India, Persia, Afghanistan,) have sprung from one common stock, and are therefore related to one another, by blood and by language.

2. These nations philologists have called the **Indo-European** or **Aryan** family.

The ancestors of the Aryan race once lived together in the highlands north of the Himâlaya mountains.

A time came, of which history gives us no account, when the old Aryan tribes separated from each other, and left their ancient abode to seek new settlements.

Two great tribes, the old Hindus and the Persians, crossed the Himâlaya mountains, and found new homes on the banks of the Ganges and Indus, from whence they soon spread over Hindostan, Persia, &c.

The rest of the Aryan tribes, at different times, and at considerable intervals, travelled westward and came into Europe.

3. The first Aryan comers were the **Kelts**, who settled in parts of Germany, Italy, Spain, Gaul, and the British Isles. Their dialects still survive in Wales, the Highlands of Scotland, Ireland, the Isle of Man, and in Armorica or Brittany.

The **Kelts** were driven out of their settlements in Italy, and pushed further westward by the advance of the **Italic** tribes.

About the same time the peninsula of Greece was peopled by the **Hellenic** or **Grecian** tribes.

Next came the **Teutons**, who took up their abode in Germany and Scandinavia. The last Aryan settlement was made by the **Lithuanians** and **Slavonians**.

The Slavonians gradually spread themselves over Russia, Bohemia, Poland, &c.

The Lithuanians settled on the Baltic coast in Prussia, Livonia, and Lithuania.

4. Of the people living in Europe the Fins, Lapps, Esths, Basques, Hungarians, and Turks, do not belong to the Indo-European family.



## 5. TABLE OF INDO-EUROPEAN LANGUAGES.

I. Hindu	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Sanscrit (dead).</li> <li>2. Hindû, Hindustanî, Bengali, Mah-rattî (all descendants from the Sanscrit).</li> <li>3. Cingalese (language of Ceylon).</li> <li>4. Gypsy dialect.</li> </ol>
II. Iranian	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Zend (the old language of Persia)</li> <li>2. Persian.</li> </ol>
III. Keltic	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Bas Breton or Armorican</li> <li>2. Welsh.</li> <li>3. Erse or Irish.</li> <li>4. Gaelic or Highland Scotch.</li> <li>5. Manx.</li> </ol>
IV. Italic or Romanic	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Latin (and old Italian Dialects, Oscan and Umbrian).</li> <li>2. The Romance dialects which have sprung from Latin. <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>(a) Italian.</li> <li>(b) French.</li> <li>(c) Spanish and Portuguese</li> <li>(d) Roumansch.</li> <li>(e) Wallachian.</li> </ol> </li> </ol>
V. Hellenic or Grecian	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Ancient Greek, with its various dialects, Attic, Ionic, Doric, &amp;c.</li> <li>2. Modern Greek.</li> </ol>
VI. Teutonic	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Low - German.—English, Dutch, Flemish.</li> <li>2. Scandinavian.—Icelandic, Swedish, Danish, Norwegian.</li> <li>3. High-German.—Modern German.</li> </ol>
VII. Lettic	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Old Prussian (dead).</li> <li>2. Lettish.</li> </ol>
VIII. Slavonic	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>1. Russian.</li> <li>2. Polish.</li> <li>3. Bohemian</li> </ol>

## II. Relation of English to the Teutonic Group.

ENGLISH IS A TEUTONIC LANGUAGE, AND BELONGS TO THE LOW-GERMAN DIALECTS.

6. The Teutonic group is that with which we are more nearly connected, English being one of its most important members.

There are three great divisions of the Teutonic people; (1) **Low-German**, (2) **Scandinavian**, (3) **High-German**.

The **Low-Germans** formerly lived near the low-lying lands, by the mouths of the rivers Rhine, Weser, and Elbe.

The **Scandinavians**, probably an off-shoot from the **Low-Germans**, settled in Norway, Sweden, Denmark, and at a later period in Iceland.

The **High-Germans** lived inland, in the highlands south of Germany (Bavaria, &c.)

7. The word *Dutch*, now only applied to the people of Holland, formerly denoted all German-speaking people. The Germans still call themselves *Deutsche*, and their language *Deutsch*.

8. The word *Dutch* is an adjective signifying national,<sup>1</sup> and was the name by which the old Teutons called themselves in contradistinction to other people, whose language they were unable to understand. They styled themselves the (intelligible)

---

<sup>1</sup> Cp. O.H. Ger. *diot*, O.E. *theod* people; O.H. Germ *diutisc*, O.E. *theodisc* of the people, popular.

people, but called others, as the Romans, and the Kelts in Britain, *Walsch* and *Welsh*.

Ancient nations gave themselves polite names, but spoke contemptuously of their neighbours. The old Hindus called themselves *Aryans* from *ârya*, noble : the Slavonians or *Slaves* got their name from *Slavo*, a word *or* renown.

9. English belongs to the Low-German division of the Teutonic languages. Its nearest living relations are *Dutch* (the language of Holland), *Flemish* (once the court language of Brabant), *Frisian* (between the Scheldt and Jutland and on the islands near the shore), *Plat-Deutsch* (on the Baltic coast); *Gothic* (the language of the Goths in the ancient province of Dacia) is a *dead* language. The Gothic translation of the Gospels by *Wulfila* or *Ulfilas* (in the fourth century) is the oldest monument of Teutonic literature extant. The *old Saxon* is also a dead language ; it was once spoken between the Rhine and the Elbe in Munster, Essen, and Cleves.

#### 10. TABLE OF TEUTONIC LANGUAGES.

I. Low-German	{ 1. Gothic (dead). 2. Old Saxon (dead). 3. English and Lowland-Scotch. 4. Frisian. 5. Dutch. 6. Flemish.
II. Scandinavian	{ 1. Icelandic. 2. Swedish. 3. Danish. 4. Norwegian.
III. High-German	{ Modern High-German, with its older stages; Middle High-German, and Old High-German.

## CHAPTER II.

## History of the English Language.

## ORIGIN OF THE ENGLISH.

11. The English language was brought into Britain about the middle of the fifth century by Low-German tribes, commonly known as Angles, Saxons, and Jutes (Frisians).

These Teutonic invaders were known to the Britons as *Saxons*, but they called themselves *English* (*Ænglisc*), and their new home *England* (*Ængla-land*, the land of the *Angles*).

The term *Angle* or *Engle* is supposed by some to take its name from the district of *Angeln* in the Duchy of Schleswig.

12. The *Frisians* or *Jutes* settled in Kent; the *Angles* in the north, east, and central parts of Britain; and the *Saxons* in the south and west parts of the island (in Essex, Sussex, Wessex, &c.)

The Lowlands of Scotland once formed part of the old Northumbrian kingdom, hence *Lowland-Scotch* is an *English dialect*.

## Foreign Elements in English.

ENGLISH WAS ORIGINALLY AN INFLECTED AND UNMIXED LANGUAGE, BUT IS NOW AN UNINFLECTED AND COMPOSITE LANGUAGE.

13. The language that was brought into Britain by the Low-German invaders, was an inflected and synthetic language, like its congener Modern German, and its more distant relatives, Sanskrit, Greek, and Latin.

Though modern English has lost most of the older grammatical endings, and has been reduced to an *analytical* language (like Danish, French, and Persian), it still belongs, by virtue of its descent, to the family of inflected languages.

14. The English language brought over by the Angles, Saxons, &c., was an *unmixed* language.

There were no non-Teutonic elements in its vocabulary.

It is now a composite or mixed language, having adopted words from various nations with whom the English people have had dealings at different times.

The foreign elements in English may therefore be treated historically.

### I.—The Keltic Element in English.

15. The English invaders of Britain displaced the old Keltic inhabitants, and did not largely mix with them; their language was, therefore, but little influenced by the speech of the British tribes. It affected the spoken far more than the written language, for from



the ninth to the twelfth century English literature furnishes but few examples of borrowed Keltic terms. The words of this period are *barrow* (mound), *brock*, *breeches*, *clout*, *crock*, *kiln*, *cradle*, *mattock*, *pool*.

In the literature of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries we find more frequent traces of Keltic terms, of which the following still survive :—*boast*, *boisterous*, *bribe*, *cam* (crooked), *crag*, *dainty*, *darn*, *daub*, *fleam*, *glen*, *havoc*, *kiln*, *mop*, *pillow*.

16. The Norman-French contained some few Keltic terms borrowed from the old Gaulish ; some of these found their way into English, as : *bag*, *barren*, *bargain*, *barter*, *barrel*, *basin*, *basket*, *bonnet*, *bucket*, *bran*, *button*, *chemise*, *car*, *cart*, *dagger*, *gravel*, *gown*, *harness*, *marl*, *mitten*, *motley*, *osier*, *pot*, *rogue*, *ribbon*, *varlet*, *vassal*, *wicket*.

17. A few words, the names of Keltic things, are of recent introduction : as, *bannock*, *bard*, *bog*, *brogue*, *clan*, *claymore*, *clog*, *log*, *fillibeg*, *gag*, *kilt*, *pibroch*, *plaid*, *pony*, *shamrock*, *slab*, *slogan*, *whiskey*.

18. The oldest geographical names are of course Keltic, especially names of rivers and of mountains ; as, *Avon*, *Ouse*, *Esk*, *Exe*, *Usk*, *Thames*, *Derwent*, *Dee*, &c., *Pen-y-Gent*, *Helvellyn*, &c., *Aberdeen*, *Kent*, *Isleover*, &c.

## 11.—The Scandinavian Element in English.

19. Towards the end of the eighth century (A.D. 787) the Northmen of Scandinavia (Denmark, Norway, Sweden, Iceland) commonly known as **Danes**, made descents upon the East coasts of England, Scotland, the Hebrides, and Ireland, as well as in other parts of Europe.

In the ninth century they obtained a permanent footing in the North and East parts of England: and in the eleventh century a Danish dynasty was established on the throne for nearly thirty years (A.D. 1016—1042).

The Scandinavians were a Teutonic people and their language very closely resembled the old English speech. It is, therefore, no easy matter to determine the exact number of words introduced by the old Northmen. Many of the borrowed words have taken an English form, so as to be no longer distinguished as pure Scandinavian. The spoken language was affected by the Danes far more than the written language, especially in Northumberland, Durham, Yorkshire, Lancashire, Cumberland, Lincoln, and Norfolk, where many Danish words are still to be found. In the eleventh and twelfth centuries only a few Scandinavian words found their way into the written language; such words are, *aren*, are; *by*, a town; *fel*, a hill; *til*, to.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries they became more common and are easily discernible; many of these still survive, as *blunt*, *bole* (of a tree), *bound* (for a journey), *busk*, *buckle-to* (buskle), *cake*, *call*, *cast*, *curl*, *cat*, *dairy*, *die*, *daze*, *droop*, *fellow*, *flit*, *fro*, *froward*, *gab*, *gait*, *ill*, *irk-* (some), *kid*, *kindle*, *loft*, *low* (flame), *neave* (fist), *muck*, *odd*, *puck*, *plough*, *root*, *same*, *scold*, *sly*, *shy*, *tarn* (lake), *ugly* (E.E. *ugge*, to fear), *weak*; *gar* (to cause, make), *greet* (to weep), are used by Spenser.

20. Very many Norse words once very common in old Northern writers have gone out of use, or have become provincial, as, *at*, to (before infinitives) *beck* (stream), *erre* (scar), *last* (fault), *lit*, (stain), *layte* (to seek), *mun* (must, shall), *trine* (to go), *tyne* (to lose), *tynsel* (loss), *thorp* or *thorp* (town), &c.

21. Many names of places ending in *by* (town), *fell* (hill), *beck* (stream), *shaw* (wood), *garth* (enclosure), indicate Danish settlements ; *firth* is the Scandinavian *fiord* (cp. Mil-ford, Water-ford).

22. The Danish invasions did much to unsettle the inflexions in the North of England. Before the Norman-French conquest we find the *n* of the infinitive falling off, and the verb in the third person singular present indicative ending in *es* instead of *eth*. The use of the plural suffix in *as* was frequently extended to nouns that originally formed the plural by the suffix *a* or *u*. The dialects of the North and North-East of England in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries are almost as flexionless as modern English. These parts of England were the last to come under the influence of Norman-French.

### III.—The Latin Element in English.

#### 1. LATIN OF THE FIRST PERIOD: connected with the Roman Invasion.

23. The Roman occupation of Britain for nearly four centuries (from A.D. 43 to A.D. 426) left its traces in the few names of places, as : *Chester*, *Gloucester*, *Dorchester*, *Exeter*, *Stratton*, *Lincoln*, &c.

Fortified towns and great roads became familiar objects to the old English settlers in Britain ; so *castra*, a camp, and *strata*, a street, soon passed into English under the forms *ceastre* = chester, and *stræt* = street. Probably *portus*, a port, as in *Ports-mouth*, was known to the oldest English. Cp. O.E. *port-gerefa*, a *port-reeve*.



## 2. LATIN OF THE SECOND PERIOD : St. Augustine's Mission.

24. The introduction of Christianity about the end of the sixth century (A.D. 596) brought England into connection with Rome, and during the four following centuries a large number of Latin words became familiar to educated Englishmen.

The words introduced into the language during this period were, for the most part, connected with the Church, its services and observances, as : *ancor*, hermit (anchoreta) ; *postol*, apostle (apostolus) ; *biscop*, bishop (episcopus) ; *calc*, chalice (calix) ; *clustor*, cloister (claustrum) ; *diacon*, deacon (diaconus) ; *clerc*, clerk (clericus) ; *munec*, monk (monachus) ; *mæsse*, mass (missa) ; *mynster*, minster (monasterium) ; *preost*, priest (presbyter) ; *sanct*, saint (sanctus) ; *carited*, charity (caritas) ; *ælmesse*, alms (eleēmosyna) ; *predician*, preach (prædicare) ; *regol*, rule (regula).

A few foreign articles now came in for the first time, and retained their Latin names.

(1) A few articles of *food, clothing, ornaments, &c.* : *butor*, butter (butyrum) ; *cêse*, cheese (caseus) ; *pæl*, pall (pallium) ; *tunic*, tunic (tunica).

(2) *Trees and Plants* : *cedar*, cedar (cedrus) ; *fic*, fig (ficus) ; *peru*, pear (pirum) ; *persuc*, peach (persicum) ; *lactuce*, lettuce (lactuca) ; *lilie*, lily (lilium) ; *pipor*, pepper (piper) ; *pisa*, pease (pisum), &c.

(3) *Animals* : *mere-greot*, pearl (margarita) ; *camel*, camel (camelus) ; *culufre*, dove (columba) ; *leo*, lion (leo) ; *pard*, leopard (pardus) ; *ostre*, oyster (ostrea) ; *pâwa*, peacock (pavo) ; *trûht*, trout (trutta) ; *turtlc*, turtle (turtur) ; *olfend* (camel), a corruption of *elephant*.

(4) *Weights* : *pund*, pound (pondus); *ynce*, inch, ounce (uncia), &c.

(5) *Miscellaneous* : *candel*, candle (candela); *disc*, disk (discus); *culter*, coulter (culter); *marman* -(stan), marble stone (marmor); *tæfl*, table (tabula); *mynet*, mint (moneta).

### 3. LATIN OF THE THIRD PERIOD : introduced by the Norman Conquest.

25. The Norman Conquest in 1066 was a remarkable event in the history of the English nation, and affected the language more than anything that happened either before or after it.

When the Normans made themselves masters of England they attempted to spread their language throughout the island. French became the language of the court and of the nobility : of the clergy and of literature : of the universities and schools : of the courts of law, and of Parliament : but French did not succeed in displacing English, for the great body of the common people refused to give up their mother-tongue, and from time to time there arose men who wrote in English for the benefit of those who knew nothing of French or Latin. After a while the Normans, being in the minority, mingled with the English and became one people. While the coalescence was taking place (in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries), there was a mingling of the two languages, and many French words found their way first into the spoken and afterwards into the written language.

After the distinction between Normans and English died out, Norman-French degenerated into a mere

provincial dialect and at last ceased to be spoken in England.

In 1349 boys no longer learnt their Latin through the medium of French.

In 1362 (the 36th of Edward III.) English superseded French and Latin in the courts of law.

Certain political circumstances helped to bring about these changes, such as the loss of Normandy in John's reign, and the French wars of Edward III. (A.D. 1339).

### Influence of Norman-French upon the Vocabulary of the English Language.

26. The Norman-French was essentially a Latin language, and the Norman Conquest added to English another very considerable Latin element.

The introduction of French words was the work of some time, and went on gradually from the eleventh to the fourteenth century.

They came into the written language at first sparingly. In the Saxon Chronicle from 1086 to 1154, we find less than twenty Norman-French words:—*court, dub* (1086), *peace* (1135), *treasure, prison, justice, rent, privilege, miracle* (1137), *standard, empress, countess, tower* (1140), *procession* (1154). A little before A.D. 1200 we find, *baron, chemise, custom, penance, palfrey, sot, jugler, master, mercy, manner, poor, riches, robbery, sacrament, charity, easy, font, sermon, passion, wait, saint, poverty, large, mantle, pride, service, spouse, taper, turn, &c.*

Even at this early period we find hybrids: *spus-had* = marriage; *crisme-cloth*; *maisterling* = prince;

*bispused, bespoused* = married ; *elmesful* = charitable, &c.

In Layamon's Brut (A.D. 1205), we find in the two versions less than one hundred words of French origin, among which we note especially, *admiral, abbey, annoy, attire, astronomy, camp, change, chattel, chieftain, close, country, cope, crown, cross, cry, delay, duke, escape, espy, false, fail, fool, grace, guile, guise, hardily, honour, hostage, hurt, ire, cable, legion, messenger, machine, male, mile, mountain, nun, nunnery, pilgrim, post, power, to roll, school, scorn, senator, serve, serving, sire, suffer, use,*<sup>1</sup> &c.

27. Numerous French words were introduced into the language during the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, by those native writers who for the first time translated religious treatises, poems, and romances, from the French into English. These compensated for the original imperfections of our language in religious, ethical, philosophical, and poetical terms ; besides giving us numerous words referring to war, chivalry, and the chase. Towards the middle of the fourteenth century, French influence upon the language was at its height.

28. Chaucer has been wrongfully accused of corrupting the written language of his day, by fresh importation of Romance words. In his translations he doubtless was compelled to employ many new terms for ideas and things, as yet unfamiliar to his countrymen ; but his vocabulary is not more deeply tinged

---

<sup>1</sup> See the long list of French words in the "Aucren Riwele," "King Alexander" ("Hist. Outlines," pp. 339-344).

with French words than other writers of the fourteenth century. He no doubt gave his authority to words already in general use, and rejected others in favour of native terms, and thus did much to fix the native vocabulary, and to stop the increasing inflow of borrowed words. It is said that not more than perhaps one hundred Romance words used by Chaucer in his various works have become obsolete.

“It is a great but very widely spread error to suppose that the influx of French words in the fourteenth century was due alone to poetry and other branches of pure literature. The Law, which now first became organized into a science, introduced many borrowed terms from the nomenclature of Latin and French jurisprudence; the glass-worker, the enameller, the architect, the brass-founder, the Flemish clothier, and the other handicraftsmen, whom Norman tastes and luxury invited, or domestic oppression expelled from the Continent, brought with them the vocabularies of their respective arts; and Mediterranean commerce—which was stimulated by the demand for English wool, then the finest in Europe—imported from the harbours of a sea where the French was the predominant language, both new articles of merchandize and the French designation for them. The sciences too, medicine, physics, geography, alchemy, astrology, all of which became known to England chiefly through French channels, added numerous specific terms to the existing vocabulary; and very many of the words first employed in English writings as a part of the technical phraseology of these various arts and knowledges, soon passed out into the domain of common life, in modified or untechnical senses, and thus became



incorporated into the general tongue of society and of books."<sup>1</sup>

29. But when the English vocabulary was thus increased by this great influx of French terms, many of the native words went out of use. Thus, if we take a thirteenth-century version of the Creed, we find *ikenned*, conceived ; *ipined was*, suffered ; *lihte*, descended ; *steih*, ascended ; *imennesse of haluwen*, communion of saints ; *ariste*, resurrection. In a fourteenth-century copy (A.D. 1340) of the Lord's Prayer we find *yeldinges*, trespasses ; *yelderres*, trespassers ; *vondinge*, temptation ; *vri*, deliver. Wicliffe has *dettis*, *dettour*, *delyvere*.<sup>2</sup>

Tyndal (1526) has *treaspases*, *treaspas* (verb) for *dettis* and *dettours*.

Many good old English words have gone out since Chaucer's time, having been replaced by Romance and Latin terms.

### Influence of Norman-French upon the Grammar of English.

30. No language gives up its grammar and adopts a new system of borrowed inflexions for its nouns, adjectives, and verbs, &c.

It will part with the greater portion of its original vocabulary, and yet leave grammatical forms almost untouched. Norman-French words found an easy

<sup>1</sup> Marsh, "History and Origin of English Language," p. 66.

<sup>2</sup> Some older versions of the Pater Noster have *gultes* and *gulteres*, trespasses and trespassers ; *childe* (shield) for *fri* (free).

entrance into our language, but the influence of four centuries only served to modify and to diminish English inflexions, not to eradicate them by the substitution of new forms.

The Danish invasion had unsettled the language in many parts of the country, and in the literature of the eleventh century we see a disposition to adopt a less inflexional structure, than in the earlier periods. Nearly every nation of the Teutonic family has, by the loss of inflexions, become almost as uninflexional as our own.<sup>1</sup> The tendency of all highly inflected or synthetical languages is to become analytical or non-inflexional, so that, had there been no Norman Conquest, we should have followed the ordinary growth of language, in replacing the older grammatical endings by the use of relational words, as, *prepositions*, *auxiliaries*, &c.

Doubtless the Norman invasion caused this change to take place more rapidly and generally, than it would otherwise have done, but even the slight direct modifications here spoken of are not found much before the fourteenth century.

31. The power of forming new words by derivation from Teutonic roots was to a certain extent checked by the introduction of so large a number of foreign words.

Instead of making a new word by the old and formerly familiar method of attaching a suffix to a living native root, it became far easier to adopt a term ready made.

---

<sup>1</sup> *German* and *Icelandic* have lost much less than other Teutonic languages.

Cp. O.E. *thanc* (thought); *thanc-ol* (thoughtful); *thancful*, *thancwurth* (grateful); *thancolmod* (prudent); *thancwurthlice* (gratefully), &c.

32. Some Norman-French suffixes replaced English ones.

In the fourteenth century we find the feminine **-ess** taking the place of **-en**, and **-ster**. Cp. *dwelleresse* in Wicliffe for *dwellstere*; *goddesse* (Chaucer) for Old English *gydin*; and the modern forms *bond-age*, *till-age*, *hindr-ance*, *knave-ry*, *wondr-ous*,<sup>1</sup> &c.

33. Some substitutes for inflexion came into use. The preposition **of** replaced the genitive **-s**; the comparison of Adjectives was expressed sometimes by **more** and **most** instead of **-er** and **-est**. Many Romance adjectives were inflected in the plural after the Norman-French method, as *wateres principales*, *capitalles lettres*; we also find *children innocens* (La Tour Laundry, p. 104).

The Old English method of forming a plural adjective was by adding **-an (-en)**, **-e**.

When used substantively, the Romance adjective formed its plural by the addition of **-s**, and the Old English by **-e**. Cp. "He ous tekth to knawe the *great-e* thinges vram the *littl-e*, the *precious-e-s* vram the *vile-s*."<sup>2</sup> To this method we owe the early forms *gentles*, *familiars*, which became the models for many others, as "our *delicates*" and *wantons*" (Holland's "Pliny," p. 603); the *yellowes* = the jaundice

<sup>1</sup> See "Historical Outlines," p. 39.

<sup>2</sup> He teaches us to know the great things from the little ones, the precious things from the vile ones.



(Hollinshed), "*yonges*" = young ones (L. Andrewe); *calms*, *shallows*, *worthies*, &c.

The use of Auxiliary Verbs (*have*, *shall*, *will*) became very common after the Norman Conquest.

34. The earliest and the greatest change was upon the pronunciation.

All the older vowel endings *-a*, *-o*, *-u*, became *-e*, and the terminations *-an*, *-as*, *-ath*, *-on*, *-od*, became *-en*, *-es*, *-eth*, *-en*, *-ed*.

After a time (fourteenth century) the final *e* fell off altogether, or was retained as an orthographical expedient. Cp. O.E. *nama*, name; *steorra*, M.E. *sterre*, star; O.E. *suna*, M.E. *sone* = son, &c.

35. This change of final vowels, simple as it was, served to weaken most of the inflexional forms.

It also helped to break down the old distinction of grammatical gender.

Thus the suffix *-a* was a sign of the masculine, and *-e* of the feminine gender; but when *webb-a* (m), *webb-e* (f), a weaver, came to be represented by the same form, *webbe*, then the final *-e*, if retained as a sign of gender, must be limited either to the masculine or feminine. An attempt was made to restrict it to the masculine, as *hunt-e*, a hunter, *spus-e*, a bridegroom; but *webbe*, a female weaver, occurs in "Piers Plowman." We now use *webster*.

We also find it frequently used up to the middle of the fourteenth century, to denote the *agent*. (Cp. the restricted sense of the old fem. *-ster*; see p. 63). We can easily understand how *widuwa* (a widow-er) dropped out of use, leaving *widuwe* (a widow), from

which a new masculine had to be formed ; just as in the sixteenth century we find *spouse* (m), and *spousesse* (f) for the twelfth century *spus* (m), and *spuse* (f).

36. After a time a few fresh vowel sounds found their way into the language, as *u*, in *duly* ; *oi* in *boil* ; the *a* in *fame* ; *ei* in *aisle*.

37. Guttural sounds were softened down or became mute.

(1) Initial and final *c* (*k*) became *ch*, *tch*, as O.E. *cild* = child ; *godlic* = *godlich* (godly) ; *streccan* = *strecche* (stretch) ; *sc* became *sh* ; *sceal* = shall ; *fisc* = fish ; *g* became *i* (*y*), *w* ; *geleāfa* = *ileafe* (be-lief) ; *hand-ge-weorc* = handy-work ; *fugol* = fowl ; *dæg* = day ; *lagu* = law.

In some instances *cg* has become *j* (*ge*, *dge*) *cringan* = to cringe ; *brycg* (M.E. *brigge*) = bridge.

(2) *c*, *ch*, *h*, *g*, have disappeared or become mute ; *ic* = *ich* = *ih* = *I* ; *cniht* (M.E. *kniht*) = knight ; *heah* = high ; *dirtig* = dirty ; &c. Cp. the falling away of *h* in *hlāf* = loaf ; *hring* = ring ; *hnecca* = neck ; *k*, and *g*, before *n*, have become mute : *cneow* = knee ; *gnagan* = to gnaw. Cp. the weakening of *l* before *f* and *k* in *calf*, *walk*, &c.

*J* (jet), *z*, *sh* (sure), *zh* (azure), were sounds that came into use after the Norman Conquest.

38. A new accentuation was introduced by the Normans. The old English accent like that of other Teutonic nations was upon the root syllable as *un-faith'-ful-ly*, *un-be-liev'-ing* ; but in French there was a slight stress of the voice upon the final syllable.

When French words were first adopted they retained their original accent, thus *raison* and *voyage* became *reáson* and *voyáge* before they were accented as *réason* and *voýage*.

In the written poetical language of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find words of pure English origin ending in *-ing*, *-liche*, *-ness*, receiving an accent on the final syllable. Chaucer rhymes *gladnësse* with *distrësse*. But an attempt was made even as early as Chaucer's time to make borrowed words conform to the native accentuation, and in the "Canterbury Tales" we find *mórtal*, *témpest*, &c. as well as *mórtál*, *tempést*, &c.

#### 4. LATIN OF THE FOURTH PERIOD: introduced by the Revival of Learning.

39. The large number of French words brought into the language by the Norman invasion, prepared the way for the introduction of fresh Latin words, through the impetus given to learning and literature by the revival of learning in England at the beginning of the sixteenth century.

There are then *two* distinct classes of Latin words in English. (1) Those that have come indirectly from Latin through French. (2) Those that have come directly from the Latin.

Words of the first class have undergone much change in spelling, and their origin is often obscured; those of the second class have suffered but little alteration, and their origin is easily recognised.

Latin.	Words coming from Latin through Norman-French.	Words coming directly from the Latin.
captivum	caitiff	captive
dilatare	delay	dilate
factum	feat	fact
fragilem	frail	fragile
hospitale	hotel	hospital
lectionem	lesson	lection
pungentem	poignant	pungent
regalem	royal	regal
securum	sure	secure
separare	sever	separate

40. Under the influence of learning, many words coming indirectly from the Latin have taken a more classical form, as, *assaute*, *dette*, *defaut*, *aventure*, *vitaille*, have been altered to *assault*, *debt*, *default*, *adventure*, *victual*, &c.

41. The influx of Latin and Greek words, by means of learning and education, lasted from the time of Henry VII. to the end of the reign of Charles II. Many Latin words when first introduced into our language altered their termination, as, *splendidious*, *mulierosity*, but others were adopted in their original form, as, *chylus* = chyle ; *classis* = class ; *precipitium* = precipice ; *mumma* = mummy ; so too with Greek words, *parallelon* = parallel ; *ecstasis* = ecstasy ; *epocha* = epoch.

As the origin of these loans was well known, we can understand why *compact*, *convict*, &c. came into use before *compacted* and *convicted* as passive participles.

42. A great number of classical words found their way into the written language which never passed into general usage, as, *inteneruate*, to soften; *deturpated*, deformed (Jeremy Taylor); *ludibundness*, *sanguinolency* (Henry More), &c.

During the reigns of Elizabeth, James, and Charles I. fine writing and speaking were greatly affected; but fortunately many true lovers of their noble mother-tongue raised a cry against the pedantic use of scholastic or *ink-horn* terms as they were then called, and thereby did something to stop the tendency to inundate the language with long and useless words.

Thomas Wilson writing in 1553 says, "Among other lessons this should first be learned, that we never affect any strange ink-horn terms, but to speak as is commonly received; neither seeking to be over fine, nor yet living over careless; using our speech as most men do, and ordering our wits as the fewest have done. Some seek so far for outlandish English, that they forget altogether their mother's language, and I dare swear this, if some of their mothers were alive they were not able to tell what they say, and yet these fine English clerks will say they speak in their mother tongue, if a man should charge them with counterfeiting the king's English." Gill in his *Logonomia Anglica*, published in 1619, thus notices what he calls the "new mange in our speaking and writing." "O harsh lips, I now hear all around me such words as *common*, *vices*, *envy*, *malice*; even *virtue*, *study*, *justice*, *pity*, *mercy*, *compassion*, *profit*, *commodity*, *colour*, *grace*, *favour*, *acceptance*. But whither, I pray, in all the world have you banished those words which our forefathers used for these new-fangled ones? Are our



words, to be exiled like our citizens? Is the new barbaric invasion to extirpate the English tongue? O ye Englishmen, on you, I say, I call, in whose veins that blood flows, retain, retain, what yet remains of our native speech, and, whatever vestiges of our forefathers are yet to be seen, on these plant your footsteps." Butler ("Hudibras," I. i. 91) speaks of:—

"A Babylonish dialect,  
Which learned pedants much affect :  
'Twas English cut on Greek or Latin,  
Like fustian heretofore on satin."

43. There are a few miscellaneous Romance words that have come into the language chiefly during the Tudor and Stuart periods.

(1) **Spanish terms.**—"During the latter half of the sixteenth century, and the first half of the seventeenth century," the Spanish language "was very widely known in England, indeed far more familiar than it ever since has been.

"The wars in the Low Countries, the probabilities at one period of a match with Spain, the fact that Spanish was almost as serviceable at Brussels, at Milan, at Naples, and for a time at Vienna, not to speak of Lima and Mexico, as at Madrid itself, and scarcely less indispensable; the many points of contact, friendly and hostile, of England with Spain for well nigh a century—all this had conduced to an extended knowledge of Spanish in England. It was popular at Court; Queen Mary and Queen Elizabeth were both excellent Spanish scholars. . . . The statesman and scholars of the time were rarely ignorant of the language."—TRENCH.

Many Spanish words end in -ado, -ade, -dor, -illo, -oon : as *armada*, *barricade*, *bravado*, *desperado*, *eldorado*, *grenade*, *parade*, *tornado*, *corridor*, *matador*, *battle-dor*, *armadillo*, *flotilla*, *peccadillo*, *punctilio* (originally *puntillo*), *vanilla*, *maroon*, *pizaroon*, *paragon*. Other familiar terms are *alligator* (*el-lagarto*),<sup>1</sup> *buffalo*, *cannibal*, *cargo*, *cigar*, *cochineal*, *crusade*, *don*, *duenna*, *filibuster*, *gala*, *garotte*, *indigo*, *mulatto*, *negro*, *parasol*, &c.

(2) **Portuguese.**—*Caste*, *fetishism*, *palaver*, *porcelain*, *moidore*, &c.

(3) **Italian.**—In the time of Chaucer, Italian exercised an important influence upon our literature, but scarcely any upon the language. During the reigns of Henry VIII., Mary, and Elizabeth, Italian was as necessary and familiar to every courtier as French is now-a-days. Numerous Italian works were translated into English and Italian peculiarities of speech were copied by English speakers and writers who wished to be thought in fashion. The writings of Surrey, Wyatt, Spenser, and Milton, show an intimate acquaintance with Italian literature. To Italian we are indebted for the following words: *ambuscade*, *balustrade*, *bagatelle*, *balcony*, *bandit*, *bravo*, *broccoli*, *buffoon*, *burlesque*, *bust*, *cadence*, *canto*, *caricature*, *cartoon*, *charlatan*, *citadel*, *concert*, *ditto*, *folio*, *gazette*, *grotto*, *harlequin*, *lava*, *madrigal*, *masquerade*, *motto*, *moustache*, *opera*, *parapet*, *pedant*, *proviso*, *regatta*, *rocket*, *ruffian*, *serenade*, *sketch*, *sovereign*, *stanza*, *stiletto*, *umbrella*, *volcano*, &c.

(4) **Modern French.**—Some few were introduced during the reign of Charles II., as *chagrin*, good

<sup>1</sup> Lat. *lacerta* = lizard.

*graces, grimace, repartee.* Many others have come into the language at a still later period: *accoucheur, début, dépôt, déjeuner, élite, goût, programme, soirée, précis, &c.*

44. A few words are borrowed from other Teutonic tongues:—

(1) **Dutch.**—Mostly nautical terms, as *boom, hoy, sloop, schooner, skipper, yacht, &c.*

(2) **German.**—(i) Names of metals, *cobalt, nickel, zinc, &c.*; (ii) *loafer, iceberg, plunder*; (iii) some few terms are formed after a German model, *father-land, folk-lore, fuller's earth, hand-book, one-sided, pipe-clay, stand-point, &c.*

45. We have naturalized miscellaneous words from various sources.—

(1) **Hindu.**—*Calico, chintz, muslin, loot, jungle, pundit, rice, durbār, &c.*

(2) **Persian.**—*Chess, lilac, orange, sash, turban, &c.*

(3) **Hebrew.**—*Abbot, amen, cabal, cherub, jubilee, pharisaical, sabbath, shibboleth.*

(4) **Arabic.**—*Admiral, alchemy, alcohol, almanac, arsenal, assassin, bazaar, chemistry, cipher, gazelle, giraffe, shrub, syrup, sofa, talisman, tariff, zenith, zero, &c.*

(5) **Turkish.**—*Bey, chouse, scimitar, &c.*

(6) **Malay.**—(Run) *amuck, bamboo, bantam, orang-utang, sago, &c.*

(7) **Chinese.**—*Caddy, nankeen, satin, tea, mandarin, &c.*

(8) **American.**—*Canoe, cocoa, hammock, maize, tobacco, tomahawk, wigwam, yam.*



## Preponderance of the Native over the Foreign Element.

46. The total number of words in a complete English dictionary would be about 100,000. Numerically the words of Classical origin are about twice as many as pure English terms. The best writers, however, use less than a tenth of the total number; while in ordinary conversation, our vocabulary contains from three to five thousand words.

Recollecting that all our most familiar terms are unborrowed, and that in an ordinary page of English, pure native words are used about five times as often as one foreign term, we can have no difficulty in seeing that the pure English element greatly preponderates over the foreign element.

English is a mixed language only in regard to its vocabulary; its grammar is neither borrowed nor mixed. We cannot, therefore, speak of English as a Romance tongue; the construction and meaning of sentences depend upon the use of our grammatical inflexions, and as these are of native origin they serve still more to make the English element the essential and most important part of our language.

47. Pure English elements are:—

### (1) Grammatical inflexions.

- a. Plural suffixes of nouns (*-s, -n*): possessive case (*-s*).
- b. Suffixes marking comparison of adjectives (*-er, -est*).

c. Verbal inflexions marking persons (*-st, -th, -s*); tense (*-d, -t*); endings of participles (*-en, -ing*).

d. Auxiliary words used in place of inflexions:—

i. Words used for comparing of adjectives (*more* and *most*).

ii. Auxiliary verbs (*be, am, have, shall, will*).

## (2) Grammatical words.

a. All numerals: *one, two, &c.*, except *second, million, billion*.

b. Demonstratives: *the, this, that, &c.*

c. Pronouns (personal, relative, &c.): *I, thou, he, who, &c.*

d. Many adverbs of time and place: *here, there, when, &c.*

e. Most prepositions and conjunctions.

f. All nouns forming their plural by vowel change.

g. All adjectives of irregular comparison.

h. All verbs forming their past tense by change of vowel.

i. All anomalous verbs.

j. Causative verbs, formed from intransitive verbs by vowel change.

## (3) i. Numerous suffixes of—

a. Nouns, *-hood, -ship, -dom, -ness, -ing, -th (-t)*, &c.

b. Adjectives, *-ful, -ly, -en, -ish, -some, &c.*

c. Verbs, *-en, -le, -er*.

## ii. Numerous prefixes.

a. *be, for, ful, over, out, &c.*

---

(4). Most monosyllabic words.

5. The names of most striking objects and agencies in nature as the heavenly bodies, *sky, heaven, sun, moon, stars*: the elements, *fire, earth, water*, and their natural changes, *thunder, lightning, hail, snow, rain, wind, storm, light, heat, darkness, &c.*; the seasons, *spring, summer, winter*; <sup>1</sup> the natural divisions of time, *day, night, morning, evening, twilight, sunset, sunrise, &c.*; natural features, external scenery, *height, hill, dale, dell, sea, stream, flood, spring, well, island, land, wood, tree, &c.*; words used in earliest childhood, *father, mother, sister, brother, son, daughter, child, home, kin, friend, house, roof, hearth*; parts of the house and household furniture, *room, wall, yard, floor, stair, gate, stool, bed, bench, loom, spoon, cup, kettle, &c.*; food and clothing, *cloth, skirt, coat, shoe, hat, &c.*; bread, *loaf, milk, cake, ale, wine, beer*; agricultural terms, *plough, rake, harrow, scythe, barn, flail, sheaf, yoke, &c.*; the ordinary terms of traffic, *trade, business, cheap, dear, sell, buy, baker, miller, smith, tanner, bookseller, &c.*; names of trees and plants, *ash, beech, birch, oak, apple, corn, wheat, &c.*; quadrupeds, *deer, sheep, sow, swine, cow, horse, goat, fox, dog, hound, &c.*; birds, *hawk, raven, rook, crow, swan, owl, dove, lark, nightingale, hen, goose, duck, gander, drake, &c.*; fish, *eel, herring, lobster, otter, whale, &c.*; insects, *worm, adder, snake, wasp, fly, gnat, &c.*; parts of the body of man and beast, *flesh, skin, bone, head, limb, hand, &c.*; *horn, snout,*

---

<sup>1</sup> *Autumn* is Latin.

*tail, claw, hoof, &c.*; modes of bodily actions and posture, &c., *sit, stand, lean, walk, run, leap, stagger, wake, sleep, nod, rise, talk, &c.*; emotions and passions, &c., *love, hope, fear, tear, weep, laugh, smile, &c.*; common colours, *white, red, brown, &c.*

48. To the Romance and Latin elements belong many words connected with dignitaries, offices, &c. as, *duke, marquis, baron, &c.*; government, *state, people, parliament, treaty, cabinet, minister, army, &c.*; law, *attorney, barrister, damage, felony, &c.*; church, *baptism, ceremony, bible, prayer, preach, lesson, creed, evangelist, &c.*; general and abstract terms, *sense, emotion, passion, colour, &c.* Latin and Greek words are most numerous in scientific and philosophical works.

## CHAPTER III.

## Early English Dialects.

49. From the eleventh to the middle of the fourteenth century there was no standard or classical language. Various forms of English were spoken in different parts of the country, and every work written during this period illustrates some local variety of the English Speech. There were three leading dialects in the fourteenth century; Southern, Midland, and Northern, each distinguished by certain grammatical peculiarities.

Thus in a work written South of the Thames the verb in the plural of the present indicative ends in **-eth**, as we **habbeth**, we have: a work composed between the Thames and Humber has **-en** instead of **-eth**, as we **habben**.

A Northern writer in the district between the Humber and the Firth of Forth avoids the use of **-eth** and **-en**, and substitutes **-es** for them, or, as is frequently the case, uses an uninflected form, as we **haves**, or we **have**.

**Southern.**—"We hopieth for to habbe heuen-riche blisce": "Ye habbeth iherd thet godspel." (Kentish Sermons, A.D. 1240—50.)

Bote the Flemynge that woneth in the west syde of Wales habbeth yleft here straunge speche, and speketh Saxonlych ynow. (Trevisa, A.D. 1387.)



Midland.— Thei knelen alle, and with o vois  
 The King thei thonken of this chois.  
 (Gower, A.D. 1393.)

We hauen shep, and we hauen swin. (Havelok  
 the Dane, before 1300.)

Northern.—Tharfor maysters soom tyme uses  
 the wand that has childer to lere under thair hand.  
 (Hampole, 1340.)

Thir twa heuens ay about-rynnes  
 Both day and nyght, and neuer blynnes.  
 (*Ib.*)

MODERN ENGLISH HAS SPRUNG FROM THE EAST-  
 MIDLAND DIALECT.

50. The Midland dialect between the Thames and  
 the Humber covered a very large area and had  
 various local varieties.

The most important of these was the East-Midland  
 spoken in Lincolnshire, Norfolk, Suffolk, Essex,  
 which had many words and grammatical forms in  
 common with the Northern dialects.

As early as the beginning of the thirteenth century  
 it had thrown off most of the older inflexions (pre-  
 served by the Southern dialects) and was almost as  
 flexionless as our own. It had an extensive literature  
 and numbered among its writers, Ormin, Robert of  
 Brunne, Wicliffe, Gower and Chaucer. Of all these,  
 Chaucer was the author whose works were most  
 popular and widely diffused. Successive writers, as  
 Hoccleve, Lydgate, and Heywood, took him for their  
 model, and thus his influence did not die out till  
 a great change caused by the revival of learning, and

other important circumstances in the reigns of the Tudors had brought about a new era in the language and literature.

It was Chaucer's influence then that caused the East Midland speech to supersede the other dialects and to assume the position of the standard literary English, from which has come in a direct line with but few flexional changes the language spoken and written by educated Englishmen in all parts of the British Empire.

#### 50a. Periods of the English Language.—

A language is said to be dead when it is no longer spoken. Such a language cannot be altered; but a living language is always undergoing some change or other. We do not always take note of it, because it is so very gradual; but when we compare the writers of one period with those of another, we have plain evidence of the fact. The farther we go back in this comparison the greater the changes appear, and our language in its earliest period looks very much like a foreign tongue.

In referring to the earlier periods or stages of growth through which our language has passed, we shall distinguish the following divisions:—

(1) **Old English** (A.D. 450—1100).—The language of this period is inflexional. Its vocabulary contains few or no foreign elements. Its poetry is alliterative. To this period belong the writings of *Cædmon*, *Alfred*, and *Ælfric*.

(2) **Early English** (A.D. 1100—1250).—The language in this period shows many changes both in orthography and grammar. In the first part of this

period the modifications were chiefly orthographical, but they affected the endings of words, and thus led the way to the grammatical changes which took place in the latter part of the thirteenth century.

To the earlier part of this period belong the following works: the *Brut*, written by *Layamon*; the *Ormulum*, by *Ormin*; the *Ancren Riwele*, &c. To the latter half belong the *Story of Genesis and Exodus*, the *Owl and Nightingale*, &c.

(3) **Middle English** (A.D. 1250—1485).—Most of the older inflexions of nouns and adjectives have now disappeared. The verbal inflexions are much altered, and many strong verbs have been replaced by weak ones. To the first half of this period belong a *Metrical Chronicle*, and *Lives of Saints*, attributed to Robert of Gloucester; Langtoft's *Metrical Chronicle*, translated by *Robert of Brunne*, and the *Handlyng Synne*, by the same writer; the *Pricke of Conscience*, by Hampole; the *Ayenbite of Inwyt*, by Dan Michel of Northgate, Kent. To the second half belong the works of *Wicliffe*, *William Langley* (or *Langland*), *Gower*, and *Chaucer*, &c.

(4) **Modern English**, from A.D. 1485 to the present time. We might subdivide this period into two parts, calling the language in the earlier period from 1485 to 1600 **Tudor English**.



## CHAPTER IV.

## Sounds and Letters.

## (1) LETTERS.

51. Letters are conventional signs employed to represent sounds. They have grown out of the old pictorial mode of writing, and were at first abbreviated pictures.<sup>1</sup>

In the oldest alphabets, a letter does not represent an indivisible sound (consonant *or* vowel), but a syllable (consonant *and* vowel).

After a time the consonants were looked upon as the most important part, and consequently they alone were written, or written in full, while the vowel was either omitted or represented by some less conspicuous symbol.

Such was the character of the old Phœnician alphabet, from which have come the Hebrew, Syriac, Arabic, Sanskrit, and Greek alphabets.

The Latin alphabet, derived from one of the older forms of the Greek, is the parent of our own symbols.

---

<sup>1</sup> Cp. the names of the letters in Hebrew and Greek, *b* = *beth* (house), *Beta* : *g* = *gimel* (camel), *Gamma* ; *d* = *daleth* (door), *Delta*.

The oldest English alphabet consisted of twenty-four<sup>1</sup> letters, all except three being Roman characters : þ, (*thorn* = *th*); and ƿ (*wên* = *w*), are Runic letters; Ð, ð is merely a crossed *d* used instead of the *thorn*. j is another form of i, and v of u. w is a doubling of u.

## (2) SOUNDS.

52. The spoken alphabet is composed of sounds produced by the articulating organs (or organs of speech), *throat, tongue, palate, lips, &c.*, which serve to modify the breath as it issues from the larynx.

There are two great divisions of Sounds :

### Vowels and Consonants.

The **Vowels** are the open sounds of a language. In a vowel sound the emission of the breath is modified by the organs of speech, but is not interrupted or stopped by the actual contact of any of these organs. In the Indo-European speech there were only three original short vowels *a, i, u* (*far, bit, full*), from which have sprung the long vowels *a* (*father*), *i* (*machine*), *u* (*fool*).

The diphthongs are formed in passing from one vowel sound to another: the oldest are *e* = *a* + *i* (*fête*), *o* = *a* + *u* (*note*). All the varieties of vowel sounds,

---

<sup>1</sup> See Whitney, "Language and the study of Language," p. 465 (1867).

(and they may be almost infinite) are modifications of the three original vowels (**a, i, u.**)

The **Consonants** are closer sounds than the vowels and less musical. They are produced by the contact of one or other of the organs of speech, whereby the stream of breath is wholly or partially stopped. In the oldest Indo-European speech there were only twelve consonant sounds, **b, p, d, t, g, k, s, m, n, l, r**; and **h** in combination with **b, d, g**, forming the aspirates **bh, dh, gh** (cp. Gr.  $\phi, \theta, \chi$ ).

**53. Classification of Consonants.**—The consonants can be arranged according to the organ by which they are sounded: **Guttural** (*g, k*): **Dental** (*d, t, th*), **Labial** (*b, p, v, f*), &c. They can also be classified according as the breath is wholly or partially stopped in its exit. Stopped sounds are called **mutes or checks**, as **g, k, d, t, b, p**.

In the sounds **m, n, ng**, the breath passes through the nose, and they are called **nasals**.

Partially stopped sounds are termed **Spirants**, as, **h, th, f, s, z, &c.**; **l** and **r** are called **Trills**.

**54.** In comparing **b** and **p** &c., **d** and **t** &c., we shall find that **b** and **d** are pronounced with less effort than **p** and **t**; hence **b** and **d**, &c. are said to be **soft** or **flat**, while **p** and **t**, &c. are called **hard** or **sharp** consonants.

## 55. TABLE OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

MUTES.				SPIRANTS.		
	Flat.	Sharp.	Nasal.	Flat.	Sharp.	Trilled
Gutturals .	G	K	NG		Ch (loch) H	
Palatals .	J	Ch			Y (yea)	
Palatal Sibilants				Zh (azure)	Sh (sure)	R
Dental Sibilants				Z (prize, rise)	S (mouse)	L
Dentals .	D	T	N	Dh (bathe)	Th (bath)	
Labials . .	B	P	M	V W (witch)	F Hw (which)	

56. Ch and j (in English) are compounds : **ch** = *t* + *sh* (sure);  
**j** = *d* + *zh* (azure).

**Zh** and **sh** are connected with the *palatals*, while **z** and **s** are allied to the dental, or lingual series of sounds.

57. From this table of consonants we have omitted

(1) **c** ; because it can be represented by **k** before **a**, **o**, **u**, and by **s** (in *rice*) before **e**, **i**, **y**.

(2) **q** ; because it is equivalent to **k****w**.

(3) **x** ; because it is a compound of **ks**, as in *fox*.

## Number of Elementary Sounds in the English spoken Alphabet.

58. In addition to the twenty-four consonants contained in the above table, we have fourteen vowels and five diphthongs, making altogether **forty-three** sounds.

### I.—Consonants.

1. <i>b.</i>	9. <i>m.</i>	17. <i>y.</i>
2. <i>d.</i>	10. <i>n.</i>	18. <i>z.</i>
3. <i>f.</i>	11. <i>p.</i>	19. <i>ch.</i>
4. <i>g.</i>	12. <i>r.</i>	20. <i>dh</i> (bathe).
5. <i>h.</i>	13. <i>s.</i>	21. <i>th</i> (bath).
6. <i>j.</i>	14. <i>t.</i>	22. <i>zh</i> (azure).
7. <i>k.</i>	15. <i>v.</i>	23. <i>sh</i> (sure).
8. <i>l.</i>	16. <i>w.</i>	24. <i>hw</i> (what).

### II.—Vowels.

25. <i>a</i> in gnat.	32. <i>e</i> in meet.
26. <i>a</i> in pair, ware.	33. <i>i</i> in knit.
27. <i>a</i> fame.	34. <i>o</i> in not.
28. <i>a</i> father.	35. <i>o</i> in note.
29. <i>a</i> all.	36. <i>oo</i> in fool, rude.
30. <i>a</i> want.	37. <i>oo</i> in wood, put.
31. <i>e</i> in met.	38. <i>u</i> in nut.

### III.—Diphthongs.

- 39. *i* in high.
- 40. *i* in aye.
- 41. *oi* in boil.
- 42. *ow* in how bound.
- 43. *ew* in mew.

## Imperfections of the English Alphabet.

59. A perfect alphabet must be based upon phonetic principles, and (1) every simple sound must be represented by a distinct symbol ; (2) no sound must be represented by more than one sign.

*a.* The spoken alphabet contains forty-three sounds, but the *written* alphabet has only twenty-six letters or symbols to represent them ; therefore in the first point necessary to a perfect system of orthography the English alphabet is found wanting.

The alphabet, as we have seen, is *redundant*, containing three superfluous letters, *c, q, x*, so that it contains only twenty-three letters wherewith to represent forty-three sounds. Again, the five vowels, *a, e, i, o, u*, have to represent thirteen sounds (see § 58). It is thus both imperfect and redundant.

The same combinations of letters, too, have distinct sounds, as *ough* in *bough, borough, cough, chough, hough, hiccough, though, trough, through, Sc. sough ; ea* in *beat, bear, heard, &c.*

*b.* In regard to the second point, that no sound should be represented by more than one sign, we again find that the English alphabet fails. The letter *ō* (in *note*) may be represented by *oa* (*boat*), *oe* (*toe*), *eo* (*yeoman*), *ou* (*soul*), *ow* (*sow*), *ew* (*sew*), *au* (*haut-boy*), *eau* (*beau*), *owe* (*owe*), *oo* (*floor*), *oh* (*oh !*). The alphabet is therefore *inconsistent* as well as *imperfect*.

Many letters are silent as in *psalm, calf, could, gnat, know, &c.*

*c.* The English alphabet is supplemented by a number of double letters called *digraphs* (*oa, oo, &c.*)



which are as inconsistently employed as the simple characters themselves.

d. Other expedients for remedying the defects of the alphabet are recognised—

(1) The use of a final *e* to denote a long vowel, as *bite*, *note*, &c.<sup>1</sup> But even with regard to this *e* the orthography is not consistent; it will not allow a word to end in *v*, although the preceding vowel is short, hence an *e* is retained in *live*, *give*, &c.

(2) The doubling of consonants to indicate a short vowel, as *folly*, *hotter*, &c.<sup>2</sup>

It must be recollected that the letters *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *u*, were originally devised and intended to represent the vowel sounds heard in *father*, *prey*, *pique*, *pole*, *rule*, respectively. In other languages that employ them they still have this value.

During the written period of our language the pronunciation of the vowels has undergone great and extensive changes at different periods, while the spelling has not kept pace with these changes, so that there has arisen a great dislocation of our orthographical system, a divorcement of our written from our spoken alphabet. The introduction of foreign elements into the English language during its written period has brought into use different, and often discordant, systems of orthography (cp. *ch* in *church*, *chivalry*, *Christian*, &c.). In addition to this there are peculiarities arising out of the orthographical usages of the Old-English dialects.

---

<sup>1</sup> This came about because the final *e* was kept in writing after the sound was dropped. The *i* in *bite* was long while the word was dissyllabic.

<sup>2</sup> This arose through the short vowel causing the doubling of the consonant.

## CHAPTER V.

## Permutation or Interchange of Sounds.

60. The sounds of a language are liable to certain changes.

## One sound often passes into another.

(1) The vowels are subject to almost infinite variations: thus, short **a**, as in *gnat*, has kept its place in *land*, *band*, &c., but has become **ai** in *name*, and **o** in *swan*, and **ou** in *bound* (O.E. *band*), &c. Long **a** has passed into **ô** in *home* (= *hâm*), *bone* (= *bân*), &c. Long **i** (as in *machine*), has become **î** in *bite*, *drive*, &c. Long **u** (as in *pool*) has become **ou**, as in *house* (= *hûs*).

(2) The consonants also pass into one another, and the laws governing these changes may be arranged under the following heads.

i. All sounds uttered by the same organ are interchangeable, as **b** and **p**, &c., **d** and **t**, &c. To ascertain these, read *across* the table in sect. 55.

ii. Sounds belonging to the same series though uttered by different organs, are interchangeable. Thus, the spirants **f** and **th**; **th** and **s**; **l** and **r**,



&c., often interchange. Read the columns *downwards* in section 55.

iii. Combination of consonants leads to assimilation of the one to the other, as *gospel* = *gos-spel* = O.E. *godspel*; *ditto* = Latin *dictum*.

61. Sounds belonging to the same organ interchange.—The most common change of sounds belonging to the same organ is the passing of a sharp into its corresponding flat mute, or *vice versâ*. Pass from col. 1 to col. 2 in section 55. Sometimes the mutes and the aspirates of the same organ interchange.

**Labials.**—**B** has become **p** in *gossip* = O.E. *godsib*. **P** has become **b** in *cobweb* = M.E. *copweb*. **F** has become **v** in *vixen* = *fixen* from *fox*; *vat* = *fat*. Cp. *wife* and *wives*. **B** and **p** change to **v**, as in *have* = O.E. *habban*; *knave* = O.E. *cnapa*. **B** and **v** sometimes pass into their corresponding nasal **m**, *summerset* = Fr. *soubresaut*; *malmsey* = O.Fr. *malvoisie*; **M** changes to **b** in *marble*, = Lat. *marmor*.

**Dentals.**—**D** becomes **t** in *clot* = *clod*; *abbot* = O.E. *abbod*. **T** passes into **d** in *card* = *chart*, Fr. *carte*, Lat. *charta*; *pedigree* = T.E. *petigree*. **D** and **t** become **th** in *father*, *mother*, O.E. *fader*, *moder*; *author* = O.E. *autour*, Lat. *auctor*. **Th** has become **d** in *could* = O.E. *cuthe*; *bedlam* = *Bethlehem*; it passes into **t** in *nostril* = O.E. *nas-thyrlu* = M.E. *nos-thirles*.

**Gutturals.**—**K** has become **g** in *wig* = *periwig* = *peruque*; *goblet* = Fr. *gobelet* = M.Lat. *cupelletum*.

**Palatals.**—**Ch** and **j** interchange in *jaw* = *chaw*; *a-jar* = *a-char*.

## 62. Sounds belonging to the same series interchange:—

i. The **Spirants** interchange with one another, **F** = **th**. Children often say *fumb* for *thumb*. Cp. *dwarf*, M.E. *dwerth* and *dweg* = O.E. *thweorh*; Russian *Fedor* = *Theodore*. **F** often represents an older **h** or **gh**, as *cough*, *laugh*, &c. **Th** becomes **s** as *loves* = *loveth*. **S** between two vowels often becomes an **r** instead of **z**. Cp. *are* = *ase*, *were* = *wese*. Cp. *forlorn* = *forlosen*; *frore* (Milton) = *frozen*; *varlet* = M. Lat. *vassaletus*.

ii. **Trills**.—**L** and **r** very frequently pass into one another, as *marble* = Fr. *marbre*, Lat. *marmor*; *palfrey* = Fr. *palefroi* = Lat. *paraveredus*; *slander* = Fr. *esclandre* = Lat. *scandalum*; *chapter* = Fr. *chapitre* = Lat. *capitulum*.

iii. **Gutturals and Palatals**.—**K** has become **ch**, as *chin*, *child* = O.E. *cin*, *cild*; *ditch* and *which* = O.E. *dic* and *hwilc*. **G** has become **j** in *singe* = O.E. *besengan*; *bridge* = O.E. *brycg*, M.E. *brigge*. Cp. *joy* = Fr. *jouir*, Lat. *gaudere*.

**63. Combination of Consonants causes assimilation.** When two consonants come together the first is made like the second, or the second like the first. Cp. *best* = *bes-st* = *bet-st*; *ad-vise* with *at-tend*, and *absorb* with *absorption*. The above examples show us that we cannot keep every combination of sounds. Thus, we may write *cupboard*, but we must pronounce it *cubboard*.

The general law for the combination of consonant

sounds is, that a flat sound must be followed by a flat sound, and a sharp by a sharp sound.

This has an important bearing in English upon (1) the plural of nouns, (2) the possessive case of nouns, (3) the third person singular of verbs, (4) the past tense and passive participle of verbs.

*Flat + Flat.*

(1) *Slabs* = *slabz*; *lads* = *ladz*; *wives* = *wivz*.

(2) *Dog's* = *dog'z*.

(3) *Wags* = *wagz*; *stabs* = *stabz*; *bathe* = *bathez*.

(4) *Dubbed* = *dubd*; *hugged* = *hugd*.

*Sharp + Sharp.*

(1) *Slaps*, *mats*, *reefs*.

(2) *Cat's*, *bank's*.

(3) *Reaps*, *fasts*.

(4) *Weeped* has become *wept*; *lacked* = *lackt*.

64. Some sounds are more difficult to pronounce than others. Difficult sounds, as gutturals, often pass into easier sounds as spirants, or into mere breathings; sometimes they disappear altogether. This explains—

(1) The loss of gutturals at the end of words, as *godly* = O.E. *godlic*; *I* = O.E.  *Ic*; *day* = O.E. *dæg*, &c.

(2) The silent letters in *through*, *though*, *high*, &c.

(3) The *f* sound in *laugh*, *cough*, &c.

(4) The *y* sound in *year*, O.E. *ger*.

(5) The *ow* in *tallow*, M.E. *talgh*.

65. The pronunciation of one sound is rendered easier by an additional one. Thus, *m* often becomes *mb* or *mp*, and *n* changes to *nd* or *nt*. Also *s* becomes *st*.

(*B* and *p* come in after *m*, because they are Labials, and *d*, *t* after *n*, because they are Dentals.)

(1) *Slumber* = O.E. *slumerian*; *nimble* = O.E. *nimol*; *number* = Lat. *numerus*; *empty* = O.E. *emtig*; *tempt* = Lat. *tentare*.

(2) *Thunder* = O.E. *thunor*; *hind* = O.E. *hine*; *tender* = Lat. *tener*; *ancient* = O.Fr. *ancien*; *tyrant* = Fr. *tiran*.

(3) *Amongst* = M.E. *amonges*; *whilst* = M.E. *whiles*, &c.

66. Occasionally certain combinations of sounds become difficult, and one of the sounds is dropped. Thus, *-nf*, *-nth*, and *-ns*, have become *-f*, *-th*, and *-s*. Cp. *soft* with Germ. *sanft*; *tooth* with Goth. *tunthus*, Germ. *zahn*; *goose* (O.E. *gôs*) with Germ. *gans*.

## GRIMM'S LAW OF PERMUTATION OF CONSONANTS.

67. We have seen that one sound may pass into another, and also that one sound is often preferred to another, especially by children in learning to speak, who say *nuffink* for *nothing*, and *poot* for *foot*, &c.

Dialects are often distinguished by their preference for particular sounds. In the south-west of England *v* and *z* are used instead of *f* and *s*, as *vinger* (finger), *zing* (sing). Languages of the same class exhibit a

similar partiality ; thus, where we have **d** and **th** the Germans employ **th** (= **t**) and **d**. Cp. *deer* = Ger. *thier* = O.H.Ger. *tier*; *thorn* = Ger. *dorn*.

This substitution of one sound for another extends to all the languages of the Indo-European family, and for the most part follows the rules already laid down for the Permutation of Sounds. (1) All sounds pronounced by the same organ are interchangeable ; (2) All sounds of the same series are liable to pass into one another. We can read table in sect. 55 across or downwards.

The collection of rules by which we can at once tell what sounds in one language correspond to those of its kindred tongues, is called GRIMM'S LAW.

To render the law as simple as possible, we must bear in mind, (1) the three-fold division of sounds into **Aspirate**, **Flat**, and **Sharp**, according to the following arrangement :—

Names.	Aspirate.	Flat or Soft.	Sharp or Hard.
Labial . . .	f	b	p
Dental . . .	th	d	t
Guttural . . .	h	g	k (c)

(2) the classification of the Indo-European languages into three groups.

- I. **Classical** (Greek, Latin, Sanskrit, &c.)
- II. **Low-German** (English, &c.)
- III. **High-German**.



(1) Grimm's Law shows us that an **Aspirate** in I. the *Classical* Languages is represented by a **flat** in II. *Low-German*, and by a **sharp** in III. *High-German*.

(2) A **Flat** mute in I. corresponds to a **sharp** in II. and an **aspirate** in III.

(3) A **Sharp** consonant in I. corresponds to an **aspirate** in II. and a **flat** in III.

I.	Classical . .	Aspirate	Flat	Sharp
II.	Low German	Flat	Sharp	Aspirate
III.	High German	Sharp	Aspirate	Flat

## ILLUSTRATIONS.

### I.

Mnemonic <sup>1</sup> ASH	Classical.	Low German.	O.H. German.
	Aspirate.	Soft <i>or</i> Flat.	Hard <i>or</i> Sharp
Labials . . .	<i>frater</i>	<i>brother</i>	<i>þruoder</i>
Dentals . . .	<i>θυγατηρ</i>	<i>daughter</i>	<i>tohtar</i> Ger. <i>tochter</i>
Gutturals . .	<i>χῆν</i> , anser (= <i>hanser</i> )	<i>goose</i>	<i>kans</i>

<sup>1</sup> If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word ASH, with its varying forms SHA or HAS, according to the sound which is to come first.

## II.

Mnemonic <sup>1</sup> SHA	Classical.	Low German.	O. II. German.
	Soft <i>or</i> Flat.	Hard <i>or</i> Sharp.	Aspirate.
Labials .	<i>κάννα</i> <i>us</i>	<i>hemþ</i>	<i>hanaf</i> (Ger. <i>hanf</i> )
Dentals .	<i>domare, duo</i>	<i>tame, two</i>	<i>zëman, zvei</i> (Ger. <i>zwei</i> )
Gutturals .	<i>ego, genu</i>	O. E. <i>Ic, knee</i>	<i>Ih, (Ger. ich)</i>

## III.

Mnemonic <sup>1</sup> HAS	Classical.	Low German.	O. H. German.
	Hard <i>or</i> Sharp	Aspirate.	Soft <i>or</i> Flat.
Labials .	<i>pater</i>	<i>father</i>	<i>vatar</i> (Ger. <i>vater</i> .)
Dentals .	<i>tu, tres</i>	<i>thou, three</i>	<i>du, dri</i> (Ger. <i>drei</i> )
Gutturals .	<i>socer</i> <i>octo</i> <i>caput</i>	<i>sweor (= sweo/hr)</i> <i>eight</i> <i>head (O. E. heafod)</i>	Ger. <i>schwager</i> Ger. <i>acht</i> (irreg.) <i>houpit</i> (Ger. <i>haupt</i> )

### SUPPRESSION, ADDITION, AND TRANSPOSITION OF CONSONANT SOUNDS.

68. There are other changes of letters that demand a slight notice. Sounds are (1) dropped, (2) added, (3) transposed.

<sup>1</sup> If it be remembered that *Soft* = *Flat*, and *Hard* = *Sharp*, the whole of Grimm's law can be remembered by the mnemonic word **ASH**, with its varying forms **SHA** or **HAS**, according to the sound which is to come first.



## (1) Dropping of Letters.

Sounds fall away from—

I. the beginning of a word (*Aphæresis*).

II. the end of a word (*Apocope*).

III. the body of a word, causing coalescence of two sounds (*Syncope*).

Accent plays an important part in these changes, unaccented syllables are much weaker than accented ones, and are thus more liable to drop off.

## I. APHÆRESIS.

reeve	=	O.E. ge-refa.
sport	=	E.E. disport.
bishop	=	Lat. episcopus.
diamond	=	Fr. diamant, Lat. adamans.

## II. APOCOPE.

before	=	O.E. beforan.
riddle	=	O.E. ræd-els.
riches	=	E.E. richesse.
maugre	=	Lat. male-gratum.
pork	=	Fr. porc, Lat. porcus.

## III. SYNCOPE.

brain	=	O.E. brægen.
head	=	O.E. heafod.
sexton	=	sacristan.
palsy	=	paralysis.
caitiff	=	Fr. chétif, Lat. captivus.
cruel	=	Lat. crudelis.
pray	=	Fr. prier, Lat. precari.
church	=	O.E. cyrice.
mint	=	O.E. mynet, Lat. moneta.
bounty	=	Fr. bonté, Lat. bonitatem.
clergy	=	Fr. clergé, Lat. clericatus.

## (2) Addition of Letters.

Letters may be added to the primitive form

- I. at the beginning of a word (*Prothesis*).
- II. at the end of a word (*Epithesis*).
- III. in the body of a word (*Epenthesis*).

## I. PROTHESIS.

**h**, haughty, Lat. *altus*, Fr. *haut*.

**n** (from the indef. article), newt (= an ewt); nouch (= an ouch).

**s**, scramble, scratch, squeeze.

## II. EPITHESES.

**d** (after an originally final *ë*), wicked, wretched.

**d** (after the letter *n*), sound. See § 65, p. 46.

**h** (after *s*), push, nourish.

**t** (after *n*). See § 65, p. 46.

**t** (after *s*). See § 65, p. 46.

## III. EPENTHESIS.

**b** (after *m*). See § 65, p. 46.

**p** (after *m*). See § 65, p. 46.

**d** (after *l*), alder (-liefest), M.E. *aller*, i.e. of all.

**n** (before *t*), lantern (Lat. *laterna*).

**n** (before *g*), messenger, passenger.

**r**, groom, hoarse, culprit.

Some letters are merely orthographical blunders, having crept in through a false etymology or analogy.

**l** in **could** because of *should*, *would*.

**h** in **lanthorn** from a supposed connection with *horn*; and in **rhyme** from a supposed connection with *rhythm*.

**th** in farther (because confused with *further*).

**s** in island (as if derived from *isle*).

**w** in whole and its derivatives.

**x** in pickaxe (as if connected with *axe*. Cp. M.E. *picoy*s).

### (3) Metathesis, or Transposition of Letters.

**r** third for *thrid* (cp. three), nostrils (for *nosthirls*), cp. trouble with *dis-turb*.

**ps** becomes **sp**, clasped (= M.E. *clapsed*), wasp (= O.E. *wæps*).

**sc** becomes **cs** or **x**, hoax (O.E. *husc*), cp. O.E. *ascian*, M.E. *axe* for *ask*.

## CHAPTER VI.

## Etymology.

69. **Etymology** treats of the classification, structure, and history of words; its chief divisions are inflexion and derivation.

## PARTS OF SPEECH.

70. Words are arranged in classes, according to the functions they perform in a sentence; these classes are called the Parts of Speech.<sup>1</sup>

<i>Declinable</i>	{	1. Noun.
		2. Adjective.
		3. Pronoun.
		4. Verb.
<i>Indeclinable</i>	{	5. Adverb.
		6. Preposition.
		7. Conjunction.
		8. Interjection.

## INFLEXION AND DERIVATION.

71. The changes which words undergo to mark case, gender, number, comparison, tense, person, &c., are called *inflexions*.

---

<sup>1</sup> Speech here means language.

The inflexion of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns, is called *declension*; when applied to verbs, it is called *conjugation*.

A *root* or *radical* is that part of a word which cannot be reduced to a simpler or more original form.

According to their origin, roots are either *predicative*, as *horse*, *white*, *write*, &c.; or *demonstrative*, as *he*, *the*, &c.

When the root is modified by a suffix, it is called a *derivative*; thus *wil-ful*, *good-ly*, *tru-th*, are derived respectively from *will*, *good*, and *true*.

Derivates may be native or foreign, as *know-ledge* (English), *sci-ence* (Latin). *Cognates* must be carefully distinguished from *derived* words: thus *father* is cognate with the Latin *pater*. but *paternal* is derived from *pater*.

Two cognate forms of the same class may exist side by side; *from* (English), and *fro* (Scandinavian).

When a derivative or compound consists of elements belonging to different languages, it is called a hybrid, as *shepherd-ess* (English + Romance), *socialism*, (Latin + Greek).

A word containing two roots is called a *compound*, as *shep-herd*, *fore-man*, *break-fast*, &c.

Prefixes like *be*, *fore*, *with*, &c., are compounded with verbs as *be-speak*, *fore-tell*, *with-stand*, &c.

Compounds like *won't*, *nill*, (will not) are called agglutinative compounds. This term might be applied to all compounds, in which the elements are intimately fused; as *none*, *naught*, *fortnight*, *gospel*, &c.

72. Suffixes of inflexion and derivation are called *formative* elements.

All Suffixes are shortened forms of predicative or demonstrative roots.

The first step towards inflexion is *collocation*, just as

*good-like* has given us *goodly*. See Suffixes of Predicative origin.

The suffix *-s* in Gothic *hund-s*, Lat. *cani-s*, which marks the nominative case, is nothing more than a shortened form of the old demonstrative pronoun, *sa*, O.E. *se*, the, that.

Thus *vox* = *voc-s*, the calling, the voice; *rex* = *reg-s*, the ruling one, the king.

The ending *-th* in the third person sing. of verbs, as *love-th*, is another form of our demonstrative *the*, *tha-t*.

73. That which was not originally an inflexion often by usage becomes one. Thus the vowel change in the plural of nouns, and in the past tense of strong verbs was not originally an inflexion.

In *feet*, *teeth*, &c., a vowel and a plural suffix (*s*) have been lost from a very early period. See Plurals of Nouns by Vowel change.

The vowel change in *held*, *fell*, &c. is due to an original reduplication. See Strong Verbs.

The addition of a syllable causes a change in the root-vowel Cp. *nātion*, and *nātional*: *fore*, and *foreheud*: *break*, and *breakfast*.

The loss of an internal letter causes the lengthening of a vowel, as *right* (pronounced *rīte*) was originally *rīht*. Cp. *ewt* from *evet*, *lord* from *hlaforð*.

The suffix *-n* in *ox-en* was not originally a sign of the plural, but was added to the root, before the addition of the ordinary plural sign *-s*. After a time the *-s* dropped off leaving the inserted letter *n* to represent the plural inflexion. Cp. *eaves*, *alms*, *riches*, &c., which are now treated like plurals in *-s*.

The primitive plural of *ox* was not *oxan* but *oxans*. *Chicken* was once used as a plural, but the *-en* is no plural sign. In O.E. the plural of *chicken* = *cycen-u* from *cycen*, a *chicken*: after



a time it became *chicken-e*, or *chicken*. Cp. M.E. *lenden* for *lenden-u* or *lenden-e*, loins.

Such nouns as *song*, *band*, &c. are usually treated as derivatives of the verbs *sing*, *bind*, &c. This is an erroneous view. The O.E. *sang*, *band*, show that these words are the roots of which *sing* and *bind* are weakened forms.

74. The same word has sometimes come to have two different forms, with different functions, as *to* and *too*; *of* and *off*: *through* and *thorough*; *one* and *an*, &c.

75. The loss of inflexion is supplied by the use of independent roots. *Case-endings* are replaced by *prepositions*; *verbal endings* by *auxiliary verbs*. Cp. the use of the prepositions *of* and *to* for the old genitive and dative inflexions: *do*, *have*, *shall*, *will*, &c. in the formation of tenses: *more* and *most* instead of *-er* and *-est* in the comparison of adjectives.

The preposition *to* has replaced the infinitive ending *-an* (*-en*) as, *drinc-an* = *to drink*.

76. There is a tendency in all languages to simplify whatever has become complex or obsolete.

Thus the plural suffix *-s* has replaced various others, in *eyes*, *hands*, *sisters*, = O.E. *eâg-an*, *hand-a*, *swustr-u*.

Many strong verbs have conformed to the weak or regular conjugation, as *helped*, O.E. *heolp*, &c. See remarks on Gender and Number of Nouns, and on Strong Verbs.

77. To supply losses, the functions of other parts of speech have been extended. The loss of the old

relative pronouns *se, the, &c.* left us the neuter indeclinable *that*; after a time the interrogatives were employed in their stead. See Relative Pronouns.

78. The English language has lost most of the older inflexions, hence its words are no longer formally distinguished (as in Latin, Greek, &c.) as belonging to certain parts of speech without reference to their use in a sentence. The functions of words like *homo, amare, &c.* are limited, but in English almost any part of speech may be used as any other part of speech.<sup>1</sup>

Thus a verb may become a noun without any change of form.

“ They think nothing they shall from it pass,  
When all that is shall be turned to *was*.”

HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure*.

“ For He [God] is wythoute *wes*, wythoute *ssel* by,”  
(For He is without *was*, and without *shall* be.)

*Ayenbite*, p. 104.

Even in Shakespeare the preterite of a verb has been converted into a substantive: a feat not easily performed by any synthetical language, cp.

“ No *had*, my Lord !” *King John*, iv. 2, 207.

“ This formal fool, your man, speaks nought but proverbs ; and speak men, what they can to him, he'll answer with some rhyme-rotten sentence, or old saying : such *spokes* as the ancient of the parish use.”

H. PORTER'S *Two Angry Women of Abingdon*.

“ Where Galaad made his avowes and *hightes* (promises).”

HARDYNG'S *Chronicle*, p. 133.

Hight = the preterite of the old verb *hatan* to call, promise.

---

<sup>1</sup> See Abbott's “Shakspearian Grammar.”

A substantive is easily used as a verb, thus Fuller in speaking of those writers who multiply on the map of the Holy Land streams bearing the name of "River of Egypt," says:—

"Such is the nimety of my caution herein, who have *Egypt rivered* this map to purpose."

FULLER, *A Pisgah sight of Palestine*, p. 618, ed. 1869.

"Do you think I *fable* with you."

BEN JONSON'S *Alchemist*.

"*Rob.* 'Las sir, that lamb

Were most unnatural that should hate the dam.

*Steph.* Lamb me no lambs, Sir.

ROWLEY, *A New Wonder*.

Adjectives are used as verbs without even the verbal ending **-en**. Shakespeare uses *to fat*, to fatten. Cp. *thai greteth* = *grandescunt*, *become great* (Palladius, *On Husbandrie*).

In Latin, nominal verbs are not uncommon, but they have a verbal form given them by the suffix to which the inflexions are added as *arbor-esc-o* from *arbor*, a tree. Fuller renders "*Hæc planta in Judæa aborescit*" by—

"Hissop *doth tree it* in Judæa."

*A Pisgah Sight*, p. 194.

An adverb may do duty for a verb, as:—

"They *askance* their eyes.

SHAKESPEARE'S *Rape of Lucrece*.

Cp. "To *back* the horses," &c.

A preposition and a numeral, originally forming an adverbial phrase, has established itself as a verb and produced a noun. Cp. *atone* and *atonement*.

“ The constable is called to *atone* the broil.”

T. HEYWOOD'S *English Traveller*.

“ To *atone* two Israelites at variance.”

FULLER, *A Pisgah Sight*, p. 519.

Any noun may be turned into an adjective; as a *gold* watch, a *church* steeple, a *silk* thread.

By the simple use of the suffix *-ed* (= possessing), we are able to give a participial, and therefore an adjective appearance to almost any noun. Cp. *booted*, *spurred*, *one-eyed*, &c.

“ As the Jews' coats were *collared* above, so they were *skirted* and *fringed* below, by God's special command.”

FULLER, *A Pisgah Sight*, p. 524.

Adjectives are easily converted into nouns. Cp. *simples*, *worthies*, *seconds*.

“ When I first took thee, 'twas for *good* and *bad*.

O change thy *bad* to *good*.”

T. HEYWOOD, *The late Lancashire Witches*.

“ Fear not my fall ; the *steep* is fairest *plain*.”

LORD BRQQKE'S *Alaham*.

“ O these *extremes* of misery and joy.

'Tis said sometimes they'll [evil spirits] impudently stand  
A flight of beams from the *forlorn* of day,  
And scorn the crowing of the sprightly cocks.”

J. CROWNE'S *Thyestes*.

“ And shall the *baser* over-rule the *better* ?

Or are they better since they are the bigger.”

CHAPMAN'S *Byron's Tragedy*.

“ Jove but my *equal*, Cæsar but my *second*.”

BEN JONSON'S *Sad Shepherd*.

Even pronominal forms are occasionally employed as nouns :—

“ The cruel’st *she* alive.”

SHAKESPEARE *Twelfth Night*, Act I. Sc. 5.

“ The *shes* of Italy.”

*Cymbeline*, Act I. Sc. 4.

“ A wretch, a worm, a *nothing*.”

FORD’S *’Tis Pity*, &c.

“ Speak of thy fair *self*, Edith.”

J. FLETCHER’S *Bloody Brother*.

“ An unthroughfaresome *whatkin* ” (an impenetrable something).—FAIRFAX.

Interjections may be converted into substantives or verbs :—

“ The effect of thine *O-yes*.”

DEKKER, *Gull’s Hornbook*.

“ All the *fohs* in fairest ladys’ mouths.”

*Ib.*

“ This sorrowful *heigho*.”

NASH, *Lenten Stuff*.

“ Cough and *hem*.”

“ *Mew* at passionate speeches.”

*Ib.*

*Mum* and *hem* are used as adjectives in the following passage :—

“ Now pleased, now froward, now *mum*, now *hem*.”

*Calisto and Melibœa*.

A slight change of pronunciation replaces an inflexion. Cp. bathe and bath, glaze and glass, co’nduct and condu’ct.

## CHAPTER VII.

## Nouns.

## I. GENDER.

79. **Gender** is a grammatical distinction and applies to *words* only. Sex is a natural distinction, and applies to *living objects*.

By personification we can speak of inanimate things as male or female, as

“The *Sun* in *his* glory, the *Moon* in *her* wane.”

In the oldest English, *Sun* was treated as a feminine noun, and *Moon* as masculine. This usage was kept up as late as the fourteenth century, and later still in rare instances.

80. In the oldest English, the grammatical distinction of words as masculine, feminine and neuter, was marked by difference of endings, and difference of declensions.

Nouns ending in **-dom**, as *freedom* (freedom) were masculine ; nouns ending in **-ung**, as *gretung* (greeting), and in **-nes**, as *godnes* (godness), were feminine ; and some diminutives in **-en**, as *mægden* (maiden), and *cycen* (chicken), were neuter ; *wife* and *child* were originally neuter ; *tongue*, *earth*, *week*, &c. were feminine, and *star*, *sea*, *tear*, &c. were masculine nouns.



Adjectives and many demonstrative and indefinite pronouns, (*he, the, this, such, an, some, &c.*) were declined in three genders, and agreed with the substantives to which they were joined in gender as well as in number and case.

81. After the Norman Conquest, adjectives and adjective pronouns lost most of their case-suffixes in the three genders, so that the older distinctions could not well be kept up. In the fourteenth century, the genders of nouns were exchanged for mere marks of sex, names of males being of the *masculine* gender, those of females of the *feminine* gender, and the names of inanimate things of the *neuter* gender; so that, strictly speaking, the so-called *genders* in modern English do not belong to the *words* at all, but only to the objects they represent. The only *genders* in English are in the Pronouns.

82. There are three ways of distinguishing the masculine and feminine.

I. By the use of suffixes.

II. By composition.

III. By using distinct words for the name of the male and female.

Only the first method comes under the head of grammatical gender.

#### I.—GENDER MARKED BY DIFFERENCES OF ENDINGS.

##### 83. A.—Teutonic Suffixes.

These are now no longer in general use.

We have a trace of two old English suffixes to mark the feminine: (1) *-en*, (2) *-ster*.

**Vix-en** (O.E. *Fyx-en*), the feminine of fox (M.E.

*vox*), is the only one we have preserved out of a tolerably large number once in common use in the oldest English, as

Masc.	Fem.
ælf (elf).	ælf-en (she-elf).
câs-ere (emperor).	câser-en (empress).
munec (monk).	munec-en (nun).
theôw (man-servant).	thêow-en (maid-servant).

In the fourteenth century the feminine in -en is rarely met with.

The change from *o* to *i* is regular when compared with the old English *god* (god), *gyd-en* (goddess), and *wulf* (wolf), *wylfen* (she-wolf). Cp. Ger. *Fuchs*, *Füchs-inn*. This change is brought about by the addition of the original vowel in the syllable -en. Cp. *gold* and *gilden*; *cock* and *chicken*.<sup>1</sup>

The suffix -ster exists in *spin-ster*. This is not strictly a feminine noun, because it does not correspond to a masculine *spinner*, but is merely restricted to an unmarried woman.

It originally meant a female spinner, as in the following passages:—

“Let the three housewisely *spinsters* of destiny rather curtail the thread of thy life.”  
*The Gull's Hornbook.*

“And my wyf at Westmunstre that wollene cloth made,  
Spak to the *spinsters* for to spinne hit softe.”

*Piers Plowman*, A. Pass. v. 130.

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries we find

<sup>1</sup> This change of the root-vowel (produced by assimilation of two vowels) is called, by German grammarians, *umlaut*.

**sempster, songster, huckster, and tapster** used as feminine substantives:—

“Wassel, like a neat sempster, and songster *her* page bearing a brown bowl.”  
BEN JONSON.

“The tapper of Tavystocke and the tapsters potte.”  
JACK JUGGLER, p. 68, *Ed. Roxb. Club*.

“The backster of Baldockburye with *her* bakinge pele (*roa*).”  
*Ib.*

In the oldest English feminine nouns ending in **-estre (-ster)**, corresponded to masculines in **-ere (er)**.

Masc.	Fem.
bæc-ere (baker).	bæc-estre.
hearp-ere (harper).	hearp-estre.
hopp-ere (dancer).	hopp-estre.
rêd-ere (reader).	rêd-estre.
sang-ere (singer).	sang-estre.
seâm-ere (sewer).	seâm-estre.
tæpp-ere (barman).	bæpp-estre.
webb-ere (weaver).	webb-estre.

In the fourteenth century the Norman-French suffix **-ess** began to replace the English **-ster**, though the older form lived on for some time side by side with its foreign substitute.

In Wicliffe we find *sleestere* and *sleeresse* (a woman slayer), *dwelstere* and *dwelleress* (female dweller), *singster* and *singeress* (songster). The employment of **webster** and **songster** (Wicliffe), **huckster** (Trevisa), **shepster**, **backstere** and **brewstere** (Langland's "Piers Plowman"), **beggestere** (Chaucer), as masculine substantives shows us that even at this early period (Middle English) the force of the suffix was con-

siderably weakened, and its origin obscured by the frequent use of the new ending **-ess**.

In the seventeenth century the following hybrids (containing the English **-ster** and the Norman-French **-ess**) made their appearance; **song-str-ess**, **seam-str-ess**, **huck-str-ess**, **spin-str-ess** (Howell), **tap-str-ess** (T. Heywood).

The suffix **-ster** now merely marks the agent; as, **maltster**; often with more or less a sense of contempt or depreciation, as, **gamester**, **punster**, **trickster**, **youngster**.

A large number of words with this suffix, very common in the Elizabethan period, have gone out of common use: *drugster*, *hackster*, *lewdster*, *oldster*, *roadster*, &c.

84. In the oldest English **-a** marks the masculine, and **-e** the feminine gender.

Masc.	Fem.
ass-a (ass).	ass-e.
mag-a (kinsman).	mag-e.
nef-a (nephew).	nef-e.
râg-a, râha (hart).	râg-e.
webb-a (weaver).	webb-e.
wicc-a (sorcerer).	wice-e.
widuw-a (widower).	widuw-e.
han-a (cock).	hen (= henn-e).
gât, (goat).	gât-e.
wulf (wolf).	wylf (= wylf-e).
hlâford (lord).	hlafdig-e.

In the thirteenth century **-a** was weakened to **-e**, consequently there was no distinction in form between the masculine and feminine, hence words like **webbe** might mean a male or female weaver. (It is masculine in Chaucer, and feminine in "Piers Plowman.")

Witch was of the common gender up to a very late period.

"Your honour is a *witch*"

SIR WALTER SCOTT, *Fortunes of Nigel*, 2.

Wizzard has no connection with witch, but is the O.F. *guisc-art*, a wise man.

Widower is a new formation from the feminine *widow*; it occurs in "Piers Plowman" (B. ix. 174).

Neve (= nef-a) gave way in the thirteenth century to *nephew* (M.E. *newew*, *nevu*; from O.F. *nevou*, Lat. *nepos*), but the old feminine *nifte* was kept up to a much later period.

## 85. B.—Romance Suffixes.

(1) **-ess** (Fr. *-esse* M. Lat. *-issa*). The Latin *-issa* makes its appearance before the Norman Conquest in *abbudisse*, *abbess*. Before the middle of the fourteenth century, the Norman-French **-ess** occurs only a few times as the ending of Romance words that had already found their way into the language. **Cuntesse** (countess) is found as early as 1140; **clergesse** occurs about 1210; **hostesse** and **emperesse** about 1278; **charmeresse** and **maystresse** (mistress) in 1340.

In the time of Wicliffe and Chaucer, this suffix established itself in the language as the ending of feminine nouns, being added to English as well as Romance roots.

Wicliffe has **-ess** for **-ster** in *dawnseresse*, *frendesse*, *neighboresse*, *techeresse*, *thralesse*. He uses **-ess** in many substantives that had no **-ess** in Norman-French, as *cosynesse*, *devouresse*, *prophetesse*, *servauntesse*, *spousesse*.

In the Elizabethan period the number of words in **-ess** was far greater than at present; this shows that the suffix is now restricted in its application. We no



longer retain **waggoness**, **rectress** (Chapman), **doctress** (Stanyhurst), **neatress** (Warner), **fosteress** (Ben Jonson), &c.

One form is now frequently used in both genders, as *singer*, *dancer*, *cousin*, *spouse*, &c.

In modern English, **-ess** is the ordinary suffix of the feminine, and it is added both to native and borrowed words, as **goddess**, **murderess**, **actress**, **baroness**.

*a.* The suffix **-ess** is added to the simple masculine as **baroness**.

*b.* The masculine ending is sometimes dropped before the **-ess**; as **sorceress** from **sorcerer**.

*c.* The masculine ending is shortened before the addition of **-ess**; as **actress** from **actor**.

**Duchess** is from O.F. *duc-esse*, *duch-esse*.

**Marchioness** is formed from M.L. *marchio*.

**Mistress** = O.F. and O.E. *maistresse* from *maister* = *master* and *mister*.

**Lass** is perhaps a contraction of *laddess*.

(2) **-ine** in **hero-ine**; and in **landgrav-ine** and **margrav-ine**, from the German **landgrave** and **margrave**.

(3) **-a** in **donn-a**, **infanta**, **sultana**, **signora**.

(4) Lat. **-trix** from Latin nouns in **-tor** occurs in some nouns taken directly from the Latin, as **adjutor**, **adjutrix**, **testator**, **testatrix**.

**Empress** was originally *emperice*, Fr. *imperatrice*, Lat. acc. *imperatricem*.

**Nurse** = M.E. *nurice*, *norise*, Fr. *nourrice*, Lat. acc. *nurtricem*.



## II. GENDER DENOTED BY COMPOSITION.

86. In the oldest English we find instances of a general term compounded with an attribute, as *man-cild* = manchild; *carl-fugol* = a male fowl (bird); *cwenfugol*, a female bird; *wifman*, woman; *wif-freond*, a female friend.

In the fourteenth century we find *knave-child*, boy; *mayde-child*, girl (Trevisa); *men-syngers*, *wymmen-syngers*, *male-child*, *female-bere*, *she-bere*, *hee-geyte*, he-goat (Wicliffe).

In Modern English, we use

(1) **Male** and **female** as **male-servant**, **female-servant**; **male-cat**, **female-bee**.

(2) **Man**, **woman**, or **maid**, as **man-servant**, **woman-servant**, or **maid-servant**. Sometimes **man** is added to the feminine, and **woman** to the masculine to mark contempt; as **man-milliner**, **woman-titan**.

(3) **He** and **she** occur mostly in the names of animals, as **he-goat**, **she-goat**.

This last method was not employed in the oldest English, and did not come into use before the fourteenth century, and then only in the names of animals.

In the Elizabethan period **he** and **she** were used as nouns.

“The proudest *he*.”—SHAKESPEARE.

“These *shes* were nymphs of the chymney.”

FULLER.

It is used as late as Dryden's time.

“Another *he*.”—*Abs. and Achith.*

### III. DIFFERENT WORDS FOR THE MASCULINE AND FEMININE.

87. The use of distinct words for the masculine and feminine, as *father*, *mother*, &c. does not belong to grammatical gender.

88. A few correlative terms, apparently distinct, are etymologically connected.

Masc.	Fem.
lad.	lass (= lad-ess).
lord.	lady (a final <i>e</i> , denoting the fem. has been lost).
nephew.	niece (Cp. Lat. <i>nepos</i> , <i>neptis</i> ).
king.	queen (from the root <i>kin</i> ; the primitive meaning of king = father; queen = mother).

89. The rule that the feminine is formed from the masculine is violated in the following words, in which the masculine is formed from the feminine:—

(1) **Bridegroom** (from *bride*) = the bride's man; groom = *goom*, O.E. *guma*, E.E. *gome*, a man. There was an E.E. *grom* = boy.

(2) **Widower** (from *widow*). See § 35, p. 19.

(3) **Gander** (from *gans*, the original form of *goose*).

In the O.E. *gandr-a* (= *ganr-a* = *gans-a*), the *a* is the sign of the masculine; *d* is merely a euphonic addition after *n*, and *r* represents a more original *s*.

(4) **Drake** is a compound from the root *end* (a duck), with an obsolete suffix *-rake*, signifying *king*. (Cp. the suffix *-rick* in *bishoprick*).

## II.—NUMBER.

90. English, like most modern languages, has two numbers, **singular** and **plural**.

Some languages, as French, have only one mode of forming the plural. In English, we have various ways of denoting the plural, one only of which (the addition of **s** to the singular), is in common use.

In the oldest English there were several plural suffixes, **-as**, **-an**, **-a**, **-u** (**-o**): **stan-as** = stones, **steorr-an** = stars, **hand-a** = hands, **lim-u** = limbs. The most common of these was the suffix **-an**. After the Norman Conquest these were reduced (in the thirteenth century) to **-es**, **-en**; and finally the termination **-es** or **-s** became the ordinary sign of the plural.

The suffix **-as** was originally the plural sign of only *one* declension of masculine nouns, as **fisc** (fish), **smith**; pl., **fisc-as**, **smith-as**. It is now the only *living* suffix which is employed when we borrow new nouns and inflect them in the plural. All other plural endings are merely the relics of a former period in which they had a living power and were not irregular.

After the Norman Conquest the suffix **-as** became **-es** (later **-us**, **-ys**, **-is**), and still remained for the most part a distinct syllable.

“ His *sonès* and his *doughtrès*, bothe I mene.”  
OCCLEVE, *De Reg. Prin.* 620.

“ To heere *Godus wordus* thei han forborn.”  
O. E. Misc. p. 226.

“ Her *bodyus* wer lyke *dragonys*,  
 Hor *tayles* wer lyke *schorpyonys*,  
 They had *naylys* on her *knocus*,  
 That wer lyke ankyr *hokys*.”

*Tundal*, 41 ed. 1843.

“ His life

That vanisht into smoke and *cloudes* swift.”

SPENSER, *Faerie Queene*, I. xi. 54.

In the fourteenth century, words of French origin were the first to thrust out the *e*, and adopt the simple suffix -s (or -z).

This loss of *e* brings the letter -s into immediate contact with the final letter of the singular, and causes the following phonetic modifications:—

*a.* If the singular noun ends in a flat consonant, a liquid, or a vowel, -s has the sound of *z*, as *tubs*, *lads*, *stags*, *hills*, *hens*, *feathers*, *days*, &c.

*b.* If the singular ends in a sharp consonant, -s is pronounced sharp, (as in *mouse*,) as *traps*, *pits*, *stacks*, &c. (For the reason of this see § 63, p. 45.)

As far as the spoken language is concerned, it would be more correct to say that the plural is formed by adding *s* or *z* to the singular.

The fuller form -es (pronounced -ez) for the plural, is obliged to be retained when the singular ends in a sibilant or palatal sound (*s*, *z*, *x*, *sh*, *ch*, *j*), as *gas-es*, *glass-es*, *wish-es*, *priz-es*, *fox-es*, *church-es*, *ag-es*, *judg-es*.

Nouns of pure English origin, whose singulars end in -f, -fe, preceded by a long vowel (except *oo*) or by *l*, change the *f* into *v*, and retain the older ending -es, as *leaf*, *leaves*, *wife*, *wives*, *wolf*, *wolves*.

This change of *f* to *v* is not known before the eleventh century. In the twelfth and thirteenth centuries we find it taking place in the dative case of nouns, *wif* (nom.), *wive* (dative), and

in the plural of adjectives *def* (sing.) *deve* (pl.) deaf. It seems that *f* between two vowels was pronounced as *v*. Cp. O.E. *heafod*, E.E. *heved*, M.E. *heed*, head, &c.

Pure English words in *-ff*, *rf*, and all borrowed words in *-f*, form their plurals in *s*, as cliffs, dwarfs, hoofs, briefs, proofs.

Nouns ending in *y* not preceded by a vowel retain the older spelling in the plural, as fly, flies, city, cities.

In M.E. the singular ended in *-ie*, or *ye*, as, flie, citie.

*Y* remains unchanged if it is preceded by another vowel, and the plural is regularly formed, as, boys, plays.

## Remains of older Plural Formations.

91. Plural formed by Vowel Change. The chief changes are—

Sing.	Plural.
a.	e.
oo.	ee.
ou.	i.

Sing.	Plural.
man, O.E. man.	men, O.E. men.
foot, O.E. fôt.	feet, O.E. fêt.
goose, O.E. gôs.	geese, O.E. gês.
tooth, O.E. tôth.	teeth, O.E. têth.
mouse, O.E. mûs.	mice, O.E. mÿs.
louse, O.E. lûs.	lice, O.E. lÿs.
cow, O.E. cu.	ki(-ne), O.E. cÿ.

In these words the primitive suffix *s* has been lost together with a preceding vowel, which modified the root vowel. Thus the old pl. of *boc* (a book) was *lêc*, which stands for a more primitive *bocis*. This change of vowel was not limited to the plural, but took place in the dative of all these words, as, *boc* (nom.) *bêc* (dative).

Breeches, breeks, had for its oldest plural *brêc*, M.E. *breek*, formed by vowel change from *brôc*. *Byrig*,



*fyrig*, *tyrf*, were once the plurals of *borough* (O.E. *burh*), *furrow* (O.E. *furh*), *turf* (O.E. *turf*).

92. Plurals in *-en* (O.E. *-an*), as *ox*, *oxen*.

*Hosen* (English Bible), *shoon* (Shakespeare), are more or less obsolete. Spenser has *eyen* (eyes), and *foen* (foes). In a work written about 1420 we find *been* (bees), *een* (eyes), *fleen* (flies), *pesen* (peas), *toon* (toes).

In the oldest English, plurals in *-en* were exceedingly common; in the twelfth and thirteenth centuries they became still more numerous because the older plurals in *-a*, *-u*, became first *-e*, and then *-en*.<sup>1</sup>

In the fourteenth century they became of less frequent occurrence, and in the northern dialects only *eyen*, *oxen*, and *hosen* were in common use.

**Children, brethren, and kine** did not originally form their plurals in *-en* (*-n*).

**Children.**—The oldest plural was *cild-r-u*, which became (i) *child-r-e* (and *childer*)<sup>2</sup>; (ii) *child-r-en* (and *childern*).

“The *childer* are pretty *childer*.”

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight of the Burning Pestle*, Act. I. Sc. 2.

In M.E. we find *calvr-en* (calves), *eyr-en* (eggs), and *lambr-en* (lambs): the last two are found as late as 1420.

“Late *lamber*” = late lambs.

PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie*, p. 145, l. 154.

**Brethren** was (1) *brothr-u*, (2) *brothr-e*, *brethr-e* (*brether*), (3) *brothren*, *brethren*.

<sup>1</sup> For proof of this, see O.E. Hom. first series, pp. xxvii.—xxxii.; second series, p. xiv.; Ayenbite of Inwyt, pp. xi–xxv.

<sup>2</sup> The E.E. *-re* became M.E. *-er*. Cp. *alre* = *aller*, (of all).



The old *brether* is found very late. "These be my mother, *brether*, and sisters" (Bishop Pilkington, died 1575). *Brethers* occurs in the *Romance of Partenay*.

The *e* in brethren comes from the dative *brêther*.

In E.E. we find *dehtren*, in M.E. *dehter*, originally *dohtru*; the dative singular was *dêhter*.

**Kine** (M.E. *kin*, *ken*) is a double plural. See § 91, p. 72.

"Fat and fair *ky*."

*Cursor Mundi*, p. 259, l. 4566.

*Kine* has had a collective sense (like *pease* and T.E. *hose*), ever since the sixteenth century.

"*Kine* or oxen."

FITZHERBERT'S *Husbandrie*, A.D. 1598.

93. Some words, originally neuter, take no plural sign, as in the oldest English: **deer**, **sheep**, **swine**, **neat**.

These words have acquired a collective sense, cp. the use of *fish*, *fowl*, *fruit*, &c., *gross*, *fathom*, *foot*, &c.

94. **Substantives having two Plural forms, with different meanings.**

**Brothers** (by blood); **brethren** (of an order or community).

**Cloths** (sorts of cloth); **clothes** (garments, clothing).

**Dies** (a stamp for coining); **dice** (for gaming).

**Pennies** (a number of separate coins); **pence** (collective).

*Pennies* = O.E. *penegas*, (E.E., M.E. *pennyes*, *pans*, *pens*), without any distinction of meaning. *Pence*, compounded with a numeral as the name of a separate piece of money, is regarded

as singular and takes a plural, as, two *sixpences*. But this is a comparatively modern usage.

“A hundred pieces of *vi pence*.”

*The Book of Princes*, p. 164.

The forms *pence*, *mice*, &c. show that the O.E. *s* had only the sharp sound in *mouse* and not the flat sound in *pens*.

**Peas** (taken individually, the plural of *pea*), **pease** (taken collectively).

**Pease** O.E. *pisa* (pl. *pesen*), is the correct form.

“*Pease* are an excellent seede.”

FITZHERBERT'S *Husbandrie*, p. 15.

In M.E. we find the plurals *pesen* and *peses*. The *s* in *pease* belongs to the root (Cp. Lat. *pisum*) and is no sign of the plural, but this was lost sight of when *pea* was coined, making its plural *peas*.

“A red berry as big as a *pease*.”

GERARDE'S *Herbal*, p. 53.

“*Benes, peses*.”—PALLADIUS' *Husbandrie*, p. 149, l. 8.

When two forms of a word occur, they must either get different meanings and so be utilised, or else one of them must drop out of use. Cp. *morrow* and *morning*, *latest* and *last*, &c.

## 95. False Plurals.

The *s* in *alms*, *riches*, *eaves*, is not a sign of the plural any more than it is in *largess*, *latches*, &c. These words are however treated as plural, although singular in form.

**Alms** is a curtailed form of the O.E. *ælmesse*, pl. *ælmessen* (M.E. *almesse*, *almes*, T.E. *almous*; pl. *almessen*, *almesses*). Cp. *alms-deed*;

“Angels desire *an alms*.”

MASSINGER, *The Virg. Mart.* iv. 3.

See Acts iii. 3.

**Riches**.—M.E. *richesse*, pl. *richesses*, O.F. *richesce*, Fr. *richesse*.

"Yet all the *riches* in the world that *is* riseth of the ground by God's sending."

"Yet *is* not this *riches* of thy getting."

*The Four Elements*, in *Old Eng. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, p. 8.

**Eaves** = O.E. *yfes*, *efese*, margin, edge; (M.E. *eves*, *ovis*; pl. *eveses*); pl. *efesen* (cp. T.E. *esen-droppers*).

"Ysekeles in *eveses*."

*Piers Plowman*, B. p. 315.

## 96. Plural Forms treated as Singulars.

Some plural forms are frequently treated as singulars; as, *amends*, *bellows*, *gallows*, *means*, *news*, *odds*, *pains*, *shambles*, *tidings*, *wages*, *thanks*, *small-pox* (= *small-pock-s*; cp. *pock-mark*).

"A little *amends*."

*Spectator*; *Piers Plowman*, B. p. 338.

"A *gallows*."—*Esther*, v. 14.

"The *bellows* blows."

SHAKESPEARE, *Pericles*, I. 2.

"A *means*."—*Winter's Tale*, IV. 3.

"By this *means*;" "this *news*."

*Measure for Measure*, III. 2.

"A fearful *odds*."—*King Henry IV.*, Part III.

"That *tidings*."—*Julius Cæsar*, IV. 3.

"A *shambles*."—WHITLOCK, p. 97.

"A *thanks*."

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, vol. I. p. 5.

"The small-*pocke*."—A. BOORDE.

The singulars *amend*, *gallow*, *mean*, *pain*, *tidings*, *wage*, *thank*, are found in older writers.

## 97. Nouns used only in the Plural.

(1) These are the names of things that consist of more than one part, or form a pair.

*a.* Parts of the body, and bodily ailments.—*Lights, lungs, intestines, &c.; measles, mumps, staggers, yellows* (the jaundice).

*b.* Articles of dress.—*Drawers, trowsers, breeches, mittens, &c.*

*c.* Tools, instruments, &c.—*Scissors, shears, tongs, scales, &c.*

(2) The names of things considered in the mass or aggregate.—*Ashes, embers, lees, molasses, &c.*

98. Some Nouns change their meaning in the Plural; as, *beef, beeves; copper, coppers; spectacle, spectacles, &c.*

### 99. Foreign Plurals.

Foreign words, when naturalized, form their plural in the ordinary English way, as, *indexes, memorandums, automaton, focuses, beaux, &c.* Others, imperfectly naturalized, still retain their foreign plural.

	Sing.	Plural
(1) Latin.	formula	formulæ
	datum	data
	radius	radii
	species	species
(2) Greek.	axis	axes
	phenomenon	phenomena
(3) Romance.	monsieur	messieurs
	bandit	banditti
(4) Hebrew.	cherub	cherubim
	seraph	seraphim

Some of these have two plurals with different meanings: as, *indexes* and *indices*; *geniuses* and *genii*; *cherubs* and *cherubim*.

*Acoustics, analytics, ethics, optics, politics*, were originally adjectives. We say *logic*, but *logics* is still used at the Irish Universities.

## 100. Plural of Compounds.

In compounds the plural is formed by *s*, as, *black-birds*, *paymasters*. When the adjective (after the French idiom) is the last part of a compound, the sign of the plural is added to the noun, *attorneys-general*, *courts-martial*, *knights-errant*, &c. ; cp. the prepositional compounds, *sons-in-law*, *lookers-on*. In a few titles the last usually takes the plural sign, as *major-generals*, *lord-lieutenants*. A few others have both terms in the plural, *knights-templars*, *lords-justices*, *lords-appellants*.

We say *master-bakers* but Robert of Brunne has *masters mareschals*.

Compounds in *-full* were once strictly adjectival (cp. *baleful*, &c.), and took no plural.

“ Three *sponefull* of vinger.”

A. BOORDE.

“ A *potful* hony.”

PALLADIUS' *Husbondrie*, p. 95, l. 963.

“ Syx hondred *syppuol* kny3tes.”

ROBERT OF GLOUCESTER, l. 3523.

“ Thre *schipful* of kny3tes.”

*Ib.* l. 2418.

## III.—CASE.

101. The different forms which a noun (or pronoun) takes, to mark its relations to other words in a sentence, are called **Cases**.

The moveable or variable suffixes that express these relations are called *case-endings*.

**Case** means a *falling*. The nominative was considered by the old grammarians as the upright form, from which the other



forms were *fallings off*, or declinations (Cp. the term declension). The Romans applied the term *case* to the nominative (*casus rectus*); not so the Greeks, from whom the idea was borrowed.

The oldest English had six cases: **Nominative, Vocative, Accusative, Genitive, Dative, and Instrumental.**

In Modern English we have the subject-noun or *Nominative case*, the object-noun or *Objective case*, and the *Possessive case*. The *Nominative* and *Objective case* of nouns have the same form, and both are without case-endings. The *Objective* includes the *Accusative* or direct object of a transitive verb, and the impersonal object or *Dative case*, generally expressed by the noun with the preposition *to* or *for* before it. It is sometimes called the *Indirect object*.

The true Dative (of nouns and pronouns) is seen in such expressions as, *he bought his brother a farm*; *I made me great works*; *woe worth the day*; *woe is me*; *me-thinks*, *me-seems*, &c. The infinitive of *purpose* is a dative in "*Their feet make haste to shed blood.*"

We have preserved the O.E. genitive *-s*, but all other endings have gone; *e* for the dative singular, and *um* for the plural have disappeared.

In the thirteenth century a final *e* represented both the singular and plural dative. The loss of this final *e* in the fourteenth century, left the dative and accusative undistinguished in form from the nominative.

### Possessive Case.

102. The **Possessive case**, unlike the **Nominative** and **Objective**, is marked by a distinct form. Our possessive is the representative of the older genitive,



but we can see how much its force is weakened when we find as late as 1420 such expressions as *strengthes qualitee* (the quality of strength), *cannys knottes* (the knots of cane), *vynes rootes* (roots of vines).

In the oldest English there were various declensions, as in Greek and Latin, and different genitive suffixes for the singular and the plural.

The suffixes for the singular in the first period were -es, *smith-es* (smith's), -an, *steorr-an* (star's) -e, *rod-e* (rood's) -a, *sun-a* (son's).

For the plural they were -a, as, *smith-a*, *rod-a*, *sun-a*; -ena, as, *steorr-ena*.

In the thirteenth century the suffixes of the genitive in the singular were -es and -e; in the plural -ene (-en), -e, and the modern form -es which often replaced the others.

In the fourteenth century -es (-s) is the ordinary suffix for singular and plural. The suffix -en, -ene (gen. pl.) is found as late as 1387; *wycchen tonges* (*Trevisa*, II. p. 187) = tongues of witches. See extract from *Trevisa* on p. 95.

103. The O.E. suffix -es was at first limited to the singular of certain masculine and neuter nouns, but was afterward extended to the feminine.

The expression *lady-day* is the last relic of the old mode of forming the genitive feminine. Fabyan (A.D. 1516) has *Mary Mawdelayne day*, (*Chronicle*, p. 488).

This ending -es (-us, -ys, -is) made a distinct syllable in the older stages of the language.

"And by the *popës* mediacioun."

CHAUCER, *Man of Lawes Tale*, l. 234.

"And cristendom of *prestës handës* fonge."

*Ib.* l. 377.

"The *nightës* char (car) the stars about doth bring."

LORD SURREY.

"Larger than the *moonës* sphere."

SHAKESPEARE, *Midsum. Night's Dream*, II. I

## Formation of the Possessive Case.

104. The Possessive case (singular and plural) is formed in the written language by the suffix *-s*. In the *spoken* language it has the same phonetic modifications as the plural *-s*. (*See* § 90, p. 71, § 63, p. 45).

The apostrophe in the singular marks the elision of the *e* of the old *-es*.

The general use of the apostrophe in the singular is not found much before the end of the seventeenth century. It was probably employed to distinguish the possessive case from the plural number. Its use may have been established from a false theory of the origin of the suffix *-s*, which prevailed from Ben Jonson's to Addison's time, namely, that it was a contraction of *his*, hence such expressions as :—

“For Jesus Christ *his* sake.”—*Prayer Book*.

“The emblem is *Camerarius his*” = (Camerarius's).

WHITLOCK, p. 52.

We find this corruption towards the close of the fourteenth century. Trevisa has “*egle hys nest*” = eagle's nest.

*-is*, another form of *-es* was sometimes written apart from its noun, and hence perhaps the confusion of *his* with *-is*, or *-es*.

In the thirteenth century we find *his* for *-is* (*-es*) intentionally used after proper names.

Nouns forming their plural by vowel change, or by the suffix *-n*, take the possessive sign after the plural ; as, *men's*, *oxen's*, *children's*.

Nouns forming their plurals in *-s* were thought to be without the case-sign ; hence in writing the possessive came to be marked by the apostrophe, as *boys'*.<sup>1</sup>

When a singular noun ends in an *s* sound, the possessive sign is dropped, and the apostrophe (often

<sup>1</sup> This came about in the seventeenth century, through the notion that the *s* in *boys'* was the sign of the plural number, and not of the possessive case.

omitted) marks its absence; as, for *justice*' sake, for *conscience*' sake, your *highness*' love, &c.

In foreign proper names (of two or more syllables) ending in *s*, the possessive is unchanged. Cp. *Moses*' law, *Thetis*' wrath, *Olympus*' top.

In common English names we generally sound an additional syllable; as *James*'s (pronounced *Fâmz-ez*).

"*Peersses* berness;" "*Peersses* wyf."

*Piers Plowman*, C. p. 148.

105. In compounds the possessive suffix is added to the last term, *the son-in-law's house*, *William-the-Conqueror's reign*.

Sometimes we find the principal substantive inflected as in the older stages.

"For his *grace's* sake the cardinal."—FORD.

"Constance the *Kynges* sister of France"

=The King of France's sister.—FABYAN.

"*Eadwardes kynges* leave"

=King Edward's leave.

"On *Williames* daye the yonger *Kynges*"

=On King William the younger's day.—*O.E. Miscell.* p. 145.

"*Sæberhtes* deáth east seaxna *cyninges*"

=The death of Sæberht, king of the East Saxons.—*Bed.* ii. 5.

### The Case absolute.

106. In the oldest period the **dative** was the absolute case. About the middle of the fourteenth century the **nominative** began to replace it. Pecoock (A.D. 1449) has a few instances of the *dative*: "**Him it witing and not weerning**," = *he knowing it and not forbidding it* (II. 325). Milton occasionally imitates the Latin construction, as "*him* destroyed." In the use of the passive participle we have introduced *being*, as, "*this being done*," which was in the sixteenth century, "*this done*."

## 107. Declension of the Old English Noun.

## I.—MASCULINE AND NEUTER NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN -es.

wulf, wolf; scip, ship; word, word.

*Singular.*

Masculine.		Neuter.	
Nom. }	wulf	scip	word
Voc. }			
Gen.	wulf-es	scip-es	word-es
Dat.	wulf-e	scip-e	word-e
Acc.	wulf	scip	word
Inst.	wulf-ê	scip-ê	word-ê

*Plural.*

Nom. }	wulf-as	scip-u	word
Voc. }			
Gen.	wulf-a	scip-a	word-a
Dat.	wulf-um	scip-um	word-um
Acc.	wulf-as	scip-u	word
Inst.	wulf-um	scip-um	word-um

## II.—FEMININE NOUNS FORMING THE GENITIVE IN -e.

gifu, gift; dæd, deed.

*Singular.*

Nom. }	gif-u	dæd
Voc. }		
Gen.	gif-e	dæd-e
Dat.	gif-e	dæd-e
Acc.	gif-e	dæd (dæd-e)
Inst.	gif-ê	dæd-ê

*Plural.*

Nom. }	gif-a	dæd-a, dæd-e
Voc. }		
Gen.	gif-a (gif-ena)	dæd-a
Dat.	gif-um	dæd-um
Acc.	gif-a	dæd-a, dæd-e
Inst.	gif-um	dæd-um

## III.—STEMS IN -n.

steorr-a, star ; tung-e, tongue ; eâg-e, eye.

Sing.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. }	steorr-a	tung-e	eâg-e
Voc. }			
Gen.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Dat. }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Inst. }			
Acc.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-e

Plural.			
Nom. }	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an
Voc. }			
Gen.	steorr-ena	tung-ena	eâg-ena
Dat. }	steorr-um	tung-um	eâg-um
Inst. }			
Acc.	steorr-an	tung-an	eâg-an

## IV.—STEMS IN -n.

brôthor, brother.

<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
Nom. Acc. }	brôthor	Nom. Acc. }	brôthr-u, brôthor
Voc. }		Voc. }	
Gen.	brôthor	Gen.	brôthr-a
Dat. }	brêthor	Dat. }	brothr-um
Inst. }		Inst. }	

108. Declension of Nouns in the thirteenth century :—

I.—wulf, wolf ; scip, ship ; word, word.

	Masc.	Neut.
Nom. }	wulf	scip, schip      word
Voc. }		
Gen.	wulu-es (wulf-es)	scip-es      word-es
Dat.	wulu-e (wulf-e)	scip-e (scip-en)      word-e
Acc.	wulf	scip      word

*Plural.**Masc.*

Nom. Acc. Voc.	wulu-es (wulf-es)
Gen.	wulu-e (wulu-en, wulu-ene)
Dat.	wulu-e (wulu-es, wulu-en)

*Neut.*

Nom. Acc. Voc.	scip-e (scip-en, scip-es)	word, (word-es)
Gen.	scip-e (scip-ene, scip-es)	word-e (word-es)
Dat.	scip-e (scip-en, scip-es)	word, (word-es)

## II.—Hand (hond), hand ; dede, deed.

*Singular.*

Fem.			Fem.
Nom. Acc.	} ded-e		hond, hand
Voc.			
Gen.	ded-e		hond-e
Dat.	ded-e		hond-e

*Plural.*

Nom. Acc. } Voc.	} ded-e (-en, -es)	hond-e (-en, -es)	
Gen.		ded-e (-es)	hond-e (-es)
Dat.		ded-en (-e, -es)	hond-en (-e, -es)

## III.—Sterr-e, star ; tunge, tongue ; e3e, (eye).

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. } Voc. }	sterr-e	tung-e	e3-e
Gen.	sterr-e(-en,-es)	tung-e (-es)	e3-e (-es)
Dat.	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	e3-e (-en)
Acc.	sterr-e (-en)	tung-e (-en)	e3-e

*.Plural.*

Nom.	}sterr-en(-e,-es.		tung-en (-e, -es)		e3-en (-es)
Voc.					
Gen.	sterr-ene		tung-ene		e3-ene
Dat.	sterr-en (-e)		tung-en (-e)		e3-en (-e)
Acc.	sterr-en(-e,-es)		tung-en (-e, -es)		e3-en (-es)



IV.—The words *fæder* (fader), brother, suster, moder, doȝter, (dohter), in the singular take no genitive inflexion. In the dative we find sometimes a final *-e*. In the plural we find nominatives in *-es*, *-en*, *-e*; as *faderes*, *brotheres* (brothers), *dohtres*, *sostres*; *brotheren*, *brethren*, *dohtren*, *deht en*, *sustren*, *modren*; *brothre*, *dohtere*, &c.

In the thirteenth century the genitive plural has sometimes the suffix *-ene* (*-en*), but more often *-es*.

The dative plural ends in *-en*, *-e* and sometimes in *-es*.

In the fourteenth century there is but little trace of the dative singular or plural.

The nominative plural of nouns ends in *-es* (*-is*, *-ys*, *-us*), without respect to gender, though many plurals in *-en* are found.

The genitive singular ends in *-es* (*-is*, *-us*, *-ys*).

Some feminines keep up the old genitive form in *-e*.

The genitive plural for the most part is like the nominative plural. We have still a trace of the old genitive plural *-ene*, (*-en*). See § 102, p. 80.

## CHAPTER VIII.

## Adjectives.

109. The English adjective has lost all the older inflexions of *number*, *gender*, and *case*.

In Chaucer's time, and a little later, we find (1) a final *e* used to mark the plural, as, "the *smalē* fowles;" (2) a final *e* to denote the definite adjective, "the *yongē* sonne," "his *halfē* cours."

Cp. "And quhen sche walkit had a lytill thrawe  
Under the *suetē grenē* bewis bent,  
Hir *fairē, freschē* face as quhite as any snawe  
Sche turnyt has, and furth her wayis went."

JAMES I. OF SCOTLAND, *The Kingis Quhair*.  
about 1423.<sup>1</sup>

In the phrase "in the olden time," we have perhaps a trace of the definite declension.

The word *ones* does duty for an inflexional *e* in the plural, as M.E., "these tweyne *olde*" = these two old ones.

110. Adjectives used as substantives form their plural regularly, as *wantons*, *calms*, *shallows*. In the fourteenth century only Norman-French adjectives used substantively could be thus inflected, as, *viles*, *preciouses*; native words formed their plural by

<sup>1</sup> This is a Scottish imitation of Chaucer.

adding the final *e*, as *suede* (sweets), *soure* (sours). In the sixteenth century we find this new method extended to English words, as *yonges* = young ones (L. Andrewe, in *Babees Book*, p. 231).

When an adjective of Norman-French origin qualified a noun, it often formed its plural by adding *s*. Chaucer has *cosins germains* as well as *capitalles lettres* (Astrolabe, p. 16). Traces of this construction are found in Tudor English.

III. In *alderliest* = dearest of all (Shakespeare, 2 *King Henry VI.* i. 1), we have one very late instance of the old genitive plural suffix *-er*. **Alder** = M.E. *aller*, E.E. *alre*, O.E. *al-ra*, the gen. pl. of *all*.

“Now Jesu Christ be your *alder* speed.”

(*Everyman*; published early in the reign of Henry VIII. See old English Plays, ed. Hazlitt, p. 1. 135).

“Adam owre *aller* fader.”

*Piers Plowman*, B. p. 298.

“Sweetest *alre* thinge.”

*O.E. Miscell.* p. 166.

## 112. Declension of the O.E. Adjective.

## STRONG OR INDEFINITE DECLENSION.

*Singular.*

	Masc.		Fem.		Neut.
Nom. } blind			blind		blind
Voc. }					
Gen.	blind-es		blind-re		blind-es
Dat.	blind-um		blind-re		blind-um
Acc.	blind-ne		blind-e		blind
Inst.	blind-ê		blind-re		blind-ê

*Plural.*

Nom.	} blind-e		blind-e		blind-u
Voc.					
Gen.	blind-ra		blind-ra		blind-ra
Dat.	blind-um		blind-um		blind-um
Acc.	blind-e		blind-e		blind-u

## WEAK OR DEFINITE DECLENSION.

*Singular.*

	Masc.		Fem.		Neut.
Nom. } blind-a			blind-e		blind-e
Voc. }					
Gen. } blind-an			blind-an		blind-an
Dat. }					
Acc.	blind-an		blind-an		blind-en

*Plural.*

Masc., Fem., Neut.,

Nom. } blind-an	
Voc. }	
Acc. }	
Gen.	blind-ena
Dat.	blind-um

113. In the thirteenth century we find the following forms of the strong declension.

*Singular.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. } blind		blind-e	blind
Voc. }			
Gen.	blind-es	blind-re (-e)	blind-es
Dat.	blind-e (-en)	blind-re (-e)	blind-e
Acc.	blind-ne (-e)	blind-e	blind

Plural for all genders :—

Nom. }	blind-e
Voc. }	
Gen.	blind-ere (-re, -e)
Dat.	blind-en (-e)
Acc.	blind-e

The strong declension has for the most part all its cases in *-e*, sometimes its oblique cases in *-en*; and throughout the plural *-e* (or *-en*).

Sometimes the definite form takes the inflexions of the indefinite declension.

In the fourteenth century we find a final *e* used to mark (1) the plural, and (2) the definite form and vocative case of the adjective. (See § 109, p. 87).

## Comparison of Adjectives.

114. **Comparison** is that change of form which the adjective undergoes to denote degrees of quantity or quality. Adverbs that have sprung from adjectives may be compared.

There are three **degrees of comparison**, the **positive** or simple form of the adjective, the **comparative** formed by adding *-er* to the positive, the **superlative** by adding *-est* to the positive.

This rule applies (1) to all words of one syllable, (2) to some words of two syllables, especially those with the accent on the last syllable.

Orthographical changes :—

(1) When the positive ends in *-e*, the comparison is formed by *-r* and *-st*. (2) Final *y* following a consonant is changed to *i* (*happy, happier, happiest*). (3) A final consonant after a short vowel is doubled, as, *wet, wetter, wettest; cruel, crueller, cruellest; cheerful, cheerfuller, cheerfullest*.

Adjectives of more than two syllables, and most adjectives of two syllables are compared by **more** and **most**.

The words *more* and *most* are pure English words, but the use of them to express comparison is due to Norman-French influence. This mode of comparison came into use towards the end of the thirteenth century, and was frequently employed by the writers of the fourteenth century.

But even at this time, adjectives of any number of syllables might be compared by *-er* and *-est*. The writers of the Elizabethan period paid very little regard to the length of the adjective.

“The *delectablest* lusty sight and *movingest* object me thought it was.”—NASH’S *Lenten Stuff*, p. 9, ed. 1871.

115. **Double comparisons** are not uncommon in Middle and Modern English. Some of these double forms arose out of an attempt to strengthen the comparison, as *more kinder, most straitest*. Others arose through the comparative degree of some irregular forms being mistaken for the positive.

“The *lesser* lights.”—*Gen.* i. 16.

“*More better*.”—*Temp.* i. 2.

“The *worser* of the twain.”—WARNER.

“*Lesse* gifts and *lesser* gaines I weigh them not.”

HALL’S *Satyres*, Book II. 2.

Some numerals, pronominal words, prepositions, &c., have a comparative suffix, *-ther (-ter)*, as *o-ther, whe-ther, af-ter, un-der*.

Traces of an old superlative *m* are to be found in *form-er* and *for-m-ost*. (See § 117, p. 96.)



## 116. Irregular Comparisons.

## I. WITH VOWEL CHANGE IN THE COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

Old, elder, eldest (O.E. *eald*, *ald*; *yldra*, *eldra*; *yldest*, *eldest*).

Elder and eldest are archaic, and are replaced by the more recent forms, **older** and **oldest**.

Cp. O.E. *lang*, *lengra*, *lengest*; *strang*, *strengra*, *strengest*. This change is caused by the original vowel before the suffix -s and -st.

Nigh, nigher, nighest, (next).

Near, nearer, nearest.

O.E. *neâh*, *neh*; *nyra*, *nearra*; *neâhst*, *nêhst*.

M.E. *negh*, *nigh*; *nerre*, *nere*, *nerrer*; *neghest*, *neyest*, *next*, *nest*.

The true representatives of the O.E. forms are *nigh*, *near*, (*nigher*), *next*.

Near is a comparative form, nearer is a double comparative.

“The Knyȝt asked leewe to ryde by an other way that was *nere* (= nearer).”—*Gest. Rom.*, p. 34.

“You’re early up, pray God it be the *near*.”

GREEN’S *Friar Bacon*. See *Macbeth* II., 4.

Next is a contracted form: *h* + *s* = *k* + *s* = *x*. Cp. M.E. *hext* = *highest*; *coxcomb* = *cock’s comb*.

Late, latter, last.

Late, later, latest.

O.E. *læt* (late), *lator*, *latost*, *lættemest*. In the thirteenth century we find *late*, *lattice*, *latst* (*latst*).

The distinction between latter and later, latest and last, is quite a modern one.

“The sea gravel is *lattest* for to drie,  
And *lattest* may thou therwith edifie.”

1420 PALLADIUS, p. 14, ll. 363-4.

Last arises by assimilation out of *lat-st*. Cp.  
*best* = O.E. *bet-st*; *gospel* = *godspel*.

(Rathe,) rather, (rathest).

O.E. *hræth*, *hræthra* (*hrethra*), *hrathost*.

Rathe in Milton means *early*, as,

“The *rathe* primrose.”—*Lycidas*.

“The *rather* born lambs.”—SPENSER.

“Late and *rathe*.”—*Piers Plowman* B. p. 132.

“The *rather* (previous) day.”—*Trevisa* III. p. 145.

“The *rathest* riping grapes.”—PALLADIUS, p. 66.

## II. FROM OBSOLETE ROOTS.

Good, better, best.

O.E. *gôð*, *betera*, (*betra*,) *betest*, *betst*.

The positive of *better* is *bat* = *good*, which root is found in O.E. *betan*, ‘to make good,’ ‘amend;’ and *boot*, in ‘to boot.’

For vowel change in *better* see *elder*; for *best* see *last*.

Bad	} worse, worst.
Evil	
Ill	

O.E. *yfel*, *wyrsa*, *wyrrest*, *wyrst*.

Worse, wor-st, are formed from the root *weor*,  
*bad*.

The -se = -re (-er). Cp. *less*, O.E. *læs-se*.

In the phrase “the weaker had the *wer*” (Harding), we have the remnant of the Danish *værre*. Spenser uses *wor* = worse.

“Was neuer *warre* o moder born.”

*Cursor Mundi*, p. 68, C.

“Was neuer *worre* of moder borne.”—*Ib.* F.

### Little, less, least.

O.E. *lytel*, *læssa*, *læsest*, *læst*.

The root of *less* and *least* is not the lit of ‘little,’ but *las*, ‘infirm.’ Cp. Goth. *lasiws*, ‘weak.’ The vowel-change is like that in *better*.

### Much, more, most.

O.E. *micel*, *mâra*, *mæst*.

**Much** is from *mycel*, through the forms *micel*, *muchel*, *mochel*.

**Mo-re** contains the root *mah*, or *magh*, to be great. Cp. *mai-n*, O.E. *mæg-en*.

O.E. *micel*, M.E. *muchel*, *muche*, *moche* = great, large.

“He seide it was not half *mech* inow.”—CAPGRAVE.

“A *much* berd” = a great beard.

*Sir G. and the G. Knight* p. 1.

*Mo* (*moe*), a shortened form of *more*, is used by Elizabethan writers for *more*. Gill makes *mo* the comparative of *many*; *more* the comparative of *much*. The Lowland Scotch has a similar distinction.

## III. FROM ADVERBIAL ROOTS OF TIME AND PLACE.

### Far, farther, farthest.

O.E. *feor*, *fyrre*, *fyrrest*; M.E. *fer*, *ferre*, (*ferrer*), *ferrest*.

**Farther.** The correct comparative is *farrer* = M. E. *ferrer*.

“þan mon (must) he gyf light  
Als *fer* als þe some dose and *ferrer*.”

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.

**Far** (M.E. *ferre*) = ‘farther,’ occurs in *Winter’s Tale*, iv. 4.

The **th** in **farther** has crept in from false analogy with **further**, M.E. *forther*, *ferther*.

**Furth-er** (O.E. *furthor*, superlative *furthmest*), is the comparative of **forth**.

"He went him *forth* and *forther* soght."—C. Mundi, C. l. 4107.

"He went *forth* and *further* so3t."—*Ib.* T.

"He went *forth* and *ferder* soght."—*Ib.* G.

**E-re, erst.** The root of **e-re** is the adverb *â*, 'ever.'

In O.E. we find *se ærra* = the former, *se æftera* (the after) = the latter.

In the thirteenth century we find *erure*, *erore* = former. O.E. *Misc.*, p. 173.

**Af-ter**, latter, second (compare *after-thought*), is from *af* = *of*, *off*.

**Fir-st** is the superlative of **fore**. See § 117, p. 96.

For change of vowel see § 83, p. 63; § 91, p. 72.

**Hind-er**, from **hind**, as in *behind*. *Hinderest* occurs in Chaucer.

**Inn-er**, from **in**. In the thirteenth century we find *innerest*.

**Neth-er**, from **neath** in *beneath*. *Nethereste* is used by Chaucer (*Astrolabe*, p. 4).

**Ov-er** is from the root **ove** (O.E. *ufe* = up), in *above*. Wicliffe has *overere* (a double comparative).

As late as the seventeenth century *over* and *upper* are opposed to *nether*.

"The *upper* part . . . shutteth close upon the *nether*."—HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 241.

"Also as it is in the parties of the grete worlde. that they beeth so i-ordeyned and isette, that the *over-meste* of the *nether* kynde touche the *nether-meste* of the *over* kynde, as oistres and schellefisch . . . in bestene kind."—*Trevisa* II., p. 181.

**Upp-er**, from **up**. *Upperest* and *overest* are found in the fourteenth century.

**Utt-er**, **out-er**, from **out** (O.E. *ut*).

### 117. Superlatives in **m**.

The O.E. **for-ma** (cp. Lat. *pri-mu-s*) = 'first,' from the root **fore**, survives in **for-m-er** (comparative form with superlative sense), and **for-m-ost**.

"The *forme* yere."—PALLADIUS, p. 71, l. 291.

"The *formast* barn that sco him bare."—*C. Mundi*, C. p. 68.

"The *first* child that ever scho bare."—*Ib.* G.

"Of alle oure *former* fadris that evere were or aren."—*Babees Book*, p. 47.

The suffix **-most** (O.E. *m-est*), contains the superlative endings **-m** and **-est**, as in **in-m-ost**, **ut-m-ost**, **up-m-ost**, **hind-m-ost**, &c.

*Further-more* (*forther-over* in Chaucer), is simply a compound like *ever-more*.

For the **Indefinite Article** see Numerals, **One**.

For the **Definite Article** see Demonstrative Pronouns.

## NUMERALS.

118. Numerals may be considered under the three following divisions, **Cardinal**, **Ordinal**, and **Indefinite Numerals**.

### I.—Cardinals.

**One** = O.E. *an*, M.E. *an*, *a*, *on*, *oon*, *o*, *oo*.

The Indefinite Article **an** preserves the original form of the numeral. The **n** falls off before a con-

sonant, and becomes *a*. (Cp. "*mine* and *my*." *A* = *one* in "all of *a* size," &c.

"Alle *salle* thai be *ane* in company,  
And als *a* saule and *a* body."

HAMPOLE'S *P. of C.*, p. 228.

*An* in seventeenth century writers is used before words beginning with *h*.

"Yea, I may say of Gardiner, that he had *an* head, if not *an* hand, in the death of every eminent Protestant."

FULLER, *Church History*, ed. 1845, iv. p. 183.

In the phrase "such *an* one," one must have had its M.E. pronunciation *oon*.

**None** and **No** are the negatives of *an* and *a*.

**Two**, *twain* (O.E. *twâ*, *twegen*).

**Three** (O.E. *thrê*, *thrêo*).

The root is *thri* or *thar*, 'to go beyond,' 'cross.' Cp. Lat. *tres* and *trans*.

**Four** (O.E. *feôwer*, *fether*; cp. Lat. *quatuor*) has lost a *th*.

**Five** (O.E. *fif*), has lost a nasal. Cp. Lat. *quinque*, Gr. *πεντε*.

**Nine** (O.E. *nigon*, M.E. *neghen*).

A *g* representing an older *v* has been lost. Cp. Lat. *novem*.

**Ten** (O.E. *tȳn*, *tên*).

Ten has lost an *h* or *g*. Cp. Gothic *taihun*, Lat. *decem*. The original form therefore was *tehen*, or *tegen*. Cp. **twenty** (O.E. *twen-tig*).

**Eleven** [O.E. *endlif* (*endleof*), *ællefne* (*ændlefone*)].

*e* = *en* = one; *lev* = *lif* (perhaps) = ten.

**Twelve** (O.E. *twelf*).

*twe* = *twa* = two; *lve* = *lif* = ten.



Sometimes *l* = *t*, and *f* = *g*, hence *lif* = *tig*, (in O.E. *twentig* = *twen-ty*.)

Some philologists say that *lif* is from O.E. *læfan*, Goth. *laibjan*, to leave; O.E. *lâf*, Goth. *laiba*, a remnant. Hence *eleven* = *one over ten*; *twelve* = *two over ten*.

The numbers from 13 to 19 are formed by the suffix *-teen* (O.E. *týne*) = *ten*. Those from 20 to 90 are formed by suffixing *ty* (O.E. *tig*) = *ten*.

**Hund-red.** In O.E. we find *hund*, and *hund-teontig* = 100. **Hund** signified *ten* originally.

**Hundred** and **thousand** are substantives (originally neuter).

119. **Distributives** express how many at a time, as, *one by one*, *one and one*, *by twos*, *two each*, &c.

*By twos.* In O.E. the dative *bi twām* would be used.

In the fourteenth century we find *be hundredes* &c. Chaucer. *Astrolabe*, pp. 11, 19, has *by on*, *by two*, &c. *By* and *by* = *one by one*; *on by on* is used by Lydgate.

120. In **Multiplicatives** the cardinal number is placed before the greater numeral, as *eight hundred*.

They may be expressed (1) by the English suffix *-fold*, as *two-fold*. Cp. O.E. *an-fald* = *simple*; (2) by the Romance suffix *-ple* (*-ble*), *double* (*duple*), *treble* (*triple*).

In M.E. we find *-double* used as a suffix instead of *-fold*.

(3) by the word *times*, as “*three times one are three*;” (4) by the adverbial form, as, “*twice two*,” “*thrice four*.”

Both O.E. *begen* (masc.), *ba* (neut.). Cp. O.E. *twēgen*, *two*.

In the thirteenth century we find the neuter form (*bey*, *ba*, *bo*, *boo*) more common than the masculine *beyn*.

Both contains the root *bo* (or *ba*), and the suffix *-th*.

In O.E. we find *ba* joined to *twa* (two), as *bâtwa*, *butwa*, *butu*. Cp. our "both two."

In the thirteenth century we find a plural *bathen*, or *bothen*, and a genitive plural *bei-re*; and in the fourteenth century *bother* and *bothers* are used as genitives.

## II. Ordinals.

121. The Ordinals, except first and second, are formed from the cardinal numbers by the suffix *-th*, as four-th, fif-th, six-th, &c.

In O.E. fifth, sixth, and twelfth, were *fifta*, *sixta*, and *twelfta*. In O.E. *th* had, probably, only the *flat* sound in *bathe*, and therefore could not follow a sharp mute.

Third = O.E. *thridda*, M.E. *thridde*.

In seventh, ninth, tenth, thirteenth, . . . nineteenth, an *n* has crept in through Northern forms of Norse origin. Cp. *tithe* = tenth.

In eigh-th (O.E. *eaht-otha*), a *t* has disappeared.

First is the superlative of *fore*, see § 116, p. 95.

Second, Fr. *seconde*, Lat. *secundus*, has replaced the O.E. *other*.

O.E. *other* = one of two; *thæt ân* = the first; *thæt other* = the second. In M.E. these became (1) *that oon* and *that other*, (2) *the ton* (*toon*, *tone*), and *the tother*.

"Tua pilers thai mad, o tile *the tan*,  
*The tother* it was o merbul stan."

*C. Mundi*, C. p. 96, ll. 1532-3.

"Two pileres thei made, of til *that oon*,  
*That other* was of marbul stoon."

*Ib.* T.

## III. Indefinite Numerals.

122. All. O.E. *eal*, *eall*; Genitive plural *al-ra*, E.E. *al-re*, M.E. *aller*, *alder*, *alther*. See § 111, p. 88.

In the Lowland Scotch dialects we find *allers*, cp. *bothers*, § 120, p. 99.

Many. O.E. *manig*, *maneg*, is another form of the root *magh* in *more*. See § 116, p. 94.

In O.E. we have *fela*, *feola* (M.E. *fele*) = many.

Many (O.E. *mænigeo*), a crowd, is a substantive in some expressions, as, "a great *many*."

"O thou fond *many*."

SHAKESPEARE, 2 *Hen.* IV. i. 3.

Few. O.E. *feâwa*, *feâ*; E.E. and M.E. *fa*, *fo*, *fon*, *fone*, *feawe*, *few*; O.E. *lyt* = few.

## CHAPTER IX.

## Pronouns.

123. The **Pronouns** are among the oldest parts of speech, and consequently have undergone much change, so that their original forms are greatly altered. Notwithstanding all this they have preserved more relics of the older inflexions than any other part of speech, as case-endings in **hi-m**, **he-r**, **ou-r**, &c.; suffixes marking gender in **it**, **what**, &c. They also illustrate the substitution of one demonstrative for another, see remarks on **she**, **they**, &c. p. 109. They show how neuter forms may take the place of the masculine and feminine, as in **this**, &c.; how one case may replace another, as in **you** for **ye**; how the singular may take the place of the plural, as in **you** for **thou**; how relative pronouns are lost and replaced by interrogatives; how new plurals replace older ones in **others**, **selves**; how impersonal pronouns are formed, as, **somebody**, &c.

124. When a pronoun stands alone, as the subject or object of a verb, it is said to be used substantively; when it modifies a noun it is said to be used adjectively. The Possessive, Demonstrative, Interrogative, Relative, and Indefinite Pronouns have often this double use.

125. The classes of Pronouns are (1) Personal, (2) Demonstrative, (3) Interrogative, (4) Relative, (5) Indefinite.

## I. PERSONAL PRONOUNS

### I. Substantive.

126. The Personal Pronouns have no distinction of gender. There are two persons, the person who speaks, called the *first* person; the person spoken to, the *second* person.

The person or thing spoken of is sometimes called the *third* person (he, she, it). It is properly a demonstrative pronoun and is inflected like other old demonstratives for gender, as well as for number and case.

**He** = that man, **she** = that woman, **it** = that thing.

In E. E. the definite article or demonstrative *the* is used instead of *he* before *that*: "mihti Lauerd is *the* that Juliane on leveth" = mighty Lord is *he* that Juliana believes in.—(*Jul.* p. 65). "Ich am *the* that spec" = I am *he* that spake.—(*Ib.*)

## 127. THE PRONOUN OF THE FIRST PERSON.

### *Singular.*

Modern English.	M. E.	E. E.	O. E.
Nom. I	I, ich, ik	Ic, ich, Ih	Ic
Gen.		min	mīn
Dat. me	me	me	me
Acc. me	me	me	mec, me

### *Plural.*

Nom. we	we	we	we
Gen.		ure	ûser, ûre
Dat. us	us, ous	us	ûs
Acc. us	us, ous	us	ûsic, ûs

## 128. THE PRONOUN OF THE SECOND PERSON.

*Singular.*

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. thou	thu, thou	thu	thu
Gen.		thin	thīn
Dat. thee	the	the	the
Acc. thee	the	the	thec, the

*Plural.*

Nom. ye, you	3e, yhe, ye	3e	ge
Gen.		eoure, ewr, 3ure	eower
Dat. you	3ou, yhou, you, yow	eow, ew, eu	eow
Acc. you	3ou, yhou, &c.	ew, ow, 3uw	eowic, eow

There was a dual of the first and second personal pronouns in O.E., which died out before A.D. 1300.

129. Remarks on the pronouns of the first and second person :—

(1) I. The guttural has fallen off, as in many words originally ending in **c** or **ch**. See § 37, p. 64.

Traces of an older form *Ich*, (which still lives on in the south-west of England), occur in old dramatic writers, as, *chill* = *ich* will (Shakespeare, *King Lear*). In early English we find *icham*, I am; *ichabbe*, I have; *nullich*, I will not; *nefdich*, I had not.

“*Icham*, a gentylman of much noble kynne,

Though *Iche* be clad in a knauës skynne.”

HAWES, *Pastime of Pleasure*.

“*Ich* am an old man.”

A.D. 1565, AWDELEY, *The Fraternity of Vacabondes*, p. 8.

(2) **Me** (dative) is still in use before impersonal verbs, *me-thinks*, *me-seems*, &c.; after interjections,



"woe is *me*," "well is *him*;" to express the indirect object, *to me* or *for me*;

"Tell *me* the truth," "he plucked *me* ope his doublet."—  
SHAKESPEARE, *Julius Cæsar*, I. 2.

In M.E. we find more frequent traces of the dative, especially with the adjectives *leof* (*lief*), *loth*, &c. and the verb *to be*.

"And lever *me* is be pore and trewe."

*C. Mundi*, T. I. 4375.

Traces of this idiom occur in the dramatic writers of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries.

The verb *had* often replaces the older *were* (subjunctive).

"*Me* had rather."—*Rich.* II. iii. 3.

= M.E. *Me* were lever.

"*You* were best take my coxcomb."

*King Lear*, I. iv.

"*You* had best."—*Ib.* II. p. 208.

"*Him* had ben lever to be syke."

FABYAN, p. 270.

"*You* were best hang yourself."

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p. 305.

In the sixteenth century the *nominative* case replaces the *dative*, as, "thou wert better," &c. for "**thoe** were better;" "**we** had best," = "us were best." Bacon uses "I think good," for "*me* thinks good."

"Better *I* were distract."

*King Lear*, iv. 7.

We no longer use *mine*, *thine*, *ours*, &c. as genitives, but only as possessive pronouns. In M.E. we find a trace of the genitive in such expressions as, "*maugre myn*" (*owres* &c.) = in spite of *me*; (*us*, &c.) "*oure* aller" = all of *us*, &c.

See ADJECTIVE PRONOUNS, § 133.

(3) *Thou* has been replaced by *you*, except in the poetical and religious language.

From the fourteenth down to the seventeenth century, we find *thou* used to express (1) *familiarity* towards friends; (2) *superiority* towards inferiors; (3) *contempt* or *anger* towards strangers.

“We maintain that *thou* from superiors to inferiors is proper, as a sign of command ; from equals to equals is passable as a note of familiarity ; but from inferiors to superiors, if proceeding from ignorance, hath a smack of clownishness ; if from affectation, a tone of contempt.”—FULLER.

(4) *Ye*, although the true nominative, has been replaced by dative or objective *you*. In the English Bible, the older use of *ye* as nominative, and *you* as dative or objective, is always carefully observed.

“*Ye* have not chosen me, but I have chosen *you*.”

*John* xv. 16.

In Sackville, Shakspeare, and Milton, we find *ye* (in an unaccented position) sometimes used instead of *you*, in the objective case.<sup>1</sup>

“Vain pomp and glory of this world, I hate *ye*.”

SHAKESPEARE, *Henry VIII.* iii. 2, 365.

“His wrath, which one day will destroy *ye* both.”

MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, ii. 734.

### 130. THE PRONOUN OF THE THIRD PERSON.—SINGULAR.

#### *Masculine.*

Modern English.	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom. he	he, ha, a	he, ha	he
Gen.	his	his	his
Dat. him	him	him	him
Acc. him	him, (hine)	hine, him	hine

<sup>1</sup> *You* does not appear as a nominative, in the written language before the sixteenth century. In the spoken language it was perhaps probably pronounced like *ye*, or the *yea* in *yearn*. Cp. *thank ee* = thank *ye* = thank you ; *look ce* = look *ye*.

*Feminine.*

Modern English.	M.E.	O.E.	E.E.
Nom. she	heo, sco	hi, heo, scæ	heo
Gen.	sche, she	hire, here	hire
Dat. her	hire, hir, here	hire, here	hire
Acc. her	hire (hi, heo)	hi, heo, hire (hise, his)	hi

*Neuter.*

Nom. it	hit (it)	hit (it)	hit
Gen.	his (hit)	his	his
Dat. it	him (hit, it)	him	him
Acc. it	hit (it)	hit	hit

## PLURAL.

Nom. they	hii, thei, thai	hi, heo, thei, thai	hi (hig)
Gen.	heore, here, her, thair, their	hire, heore, here, the <sub>33re</sub>	hira (heora)
Dat. them	hem, hom, theim, thaim, tham	heom, hem, ham, the <sub>33m</sub>	him (heom)
Acc. them	hem, theim, tham	hi, heo, heom, hem, the <sub>33m</sub> (hise, his)	hi (hig)

131. Observations on the Pronoun of the Third Person:—

(1) In Old English there was only one stem, *hi*, from which *he*, *she*, *it*, and their cases were formed. The modern declension contains three stems, *hi*, *sa*, *tha*.

(2) *He*. In Middle English we find *ha* and *a* = *he*. Cp. "quoth *a*."

" 'Rah, tah, tah,' would *a* say; 'bounce,' would *a* say; and away again would *a* go; and again would *a* come."

—*Hen. IV.* PART II. iii. 2. 303.

(3) **Hi-m** (*dat.*) contains a real dative suffix *m*.  
Cp. *who-m*.

(4) **Hi-m** (*acc.*). The old accusative was *hi-ne*, which began to go out of use in the thirteenth century, and by Chaucer's time had wholly disappeared in the Midland dialect.

"Heo *hine* bitauhte knyhtes þat duden *him* muchele  
schonde ;

þe knyhtes þet *hine* ledden bitauhten *him* þe rode."

= They delivered him to knights that did to him great  
shame ;

The knights that led him delivered to him the cross.

*O.E. Miscell.* p. 49.

(5) **She** replaces the older *heo*, which lasted as late as 1387. It is an altered form of the Old English feminine definite article *seo*, or *sio* (Icelandic *sú*).

"Heo nuste hwat *heo* mende, *heo* wes of wytte poure."

= She knew not what she meant, she was of wit poor.

*O.E. Miscell.* p. 85.

(6) **He-r** (*dat.*) contains a dative (fem.) suffix *-r*, (*-re*).

**He-r**, (*acc.*) originally dative, has replaced the old accusative *hi* or *heo*.

"Heo cuþeþ *hi* well sone."

= She will show herself very soon.

*O.E. Miscell.* p. 118.

"He ber *heo* on his schuldre."

= He bore her on his shoulder.

*Ib.* p. 49.

(7) **It** has lost an initial *h*. The final *t* was originally a suffix of the neuter gender, as in *tha-t*, *wha-t*. Cp. Latin *i-d*, *illu-d*, *istu-d*, *quo-d*.

It is often employed in O.E. where we use **there**.

“ It es na tung may tell.”

*C. Mundi*, p. 84.

“ It *ben* the deueles disoures.”

*Piers Plowman*, B. vi. 56.

(8) **It** (*dat.*) has replaced the true form **him**.

(9) **They** is the old nominative plural of the definite article. It replaced the older form *hi* or *heo* in the beginning of the thirteenth century in the dialects of the North and North East of England, under the forms *pei*, *pezz*, *pai*.

“ Ic nele neuer þe vorsake, and so *hi* seyden alle.  
þo *hi* hedden al þis iherd *heo* were ful sori.”

= I will never forsake thee, and so they said all ;

When they had heard all this they were full sorry.

*O.E. Miscell.* p. 41.

(10) **The-m** (*dat.*) is the dative plural of the old definite article and replaces the demonstrative **hem**.

**The-m** (*acc.*) was originally a dative and replaced the older forms *hi*, *heo*, *hem* ; the true accusative is *they*, O.E. *thâ*.

“ So ha sente *hi* into his wynyarde.”

= So he sent them into his vineyard.

*O.E. Miscell.* p. 33.

“ And [he wule] makie *heo* unfere.”

= And he will make them unbold.

*Ib.* p. 75.

“ And right anon *thay* token *here* way to the court of Melibe, and token with *hem* some of *here* ‘rewe frendes.”—  
CHAUCER, ed. Morris, iii. p. 193.

In the dramatists, *'em* is not a corruption of *them*, but of the older *hem*.

(11) The following table shows the origin of *she*, *they*, &c. :—

DEFINITE ARTICLE.—SINGULAR.

Nom.	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
	se (E. E. the) <sup>1</sup>	seo, sio	thæt
	the	she	that

PLURAL.

Nom.	Poss.	Dat.	Acc.
thā	thāra	thām	thā
they	their	them	

*Obs.* The following examples show the demonstrative character of *they* = those (nom. and acc.).

“For *they* carles garre syke a dinne.”

WARNER, *Albion's England*, p. 118.

“And *tha* bandes of fyre salle never slake.”

= And those bonds of fire shall never slack.

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 7177.

“But *thai* prophetis so thyn ar sawin.”

= But those prophets are so thinly sown.

BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, iv. 685.

“For he had drede of *thai* thre men.”

= For he had dread of those three men.

*Ib.* vii. 185.

“*Thai* thre tratouris he has slane.”

= Those three traitors has he slain.

*Ib.* vii. 222.

---

<sup>1</sup> In O.E. *the* was only used as an indeclinable relative. In E.E. *the* (masc.) and *theo* (fem.) were used as demonstrative pronouns instead of O.E. *se* and *seo*.



“ Ane of *thai* That com for to sla the kyng.”  
= One of those that came to slay the king.

BARBOUR, *The Bruce*, vii. 212.

*Tho* is another form of *tha* and *thei*.

“ þo weore þeos—  
bat weoren in þe pynen of helle.”

= They were those  
That were in the pains of hell.

O. E. *Miscell.* p. 232.

“ Yf ye wille after this do to me so  
As ye have done, ye shalle have alle *tho*.” (*them*=coins)  
OCCLEVE, *De Reg.* 166.

“ And *tho* that cannot (beat their husbands), they will  
never let  
Their tongues cease.”. . . . .

HAWES, *P. of Pl.* p. 136.

## II. Reflexive Pronouns.

132. The simple personal pronouns *me*, *thee*, &c. may be used reflexively, as, “I repent *me*,” “get *thee* hence,” “sit you down.”

The word *self* is usually added to them.

*Singular*.—Myself, thyself, yourself, himself, herself, itself.

*Plural*.—Ourselves, yourselves, themselves.

*Self* (O.E. *silf*), was at first declined as an adjective along with the personal pronouns; nom. *ic silfa*, gen. *mîn silfes*; dat. *me silfum*; acc. *me silfne*.

Between the nominative of the personal pronoun and the word *silf*, the dative case of the pronoun was inserted, as: *ic me silf* = I myself; *thu the silf* = thou thyself; *he him silf* = he himself; *we us silfe* = we ourselves; *ye eow silfe* = you yourselves;

*hi him selfe* = they themselves. So we could say *God silf* and *God him silf*.

These forms are emphatic rather than reflexive.

In the thirteenth century we find the *possessive* pronoun replacing the *dative*, as, *I mi self*, *thu thi self*, &c. instead of *I me self*, *thu the self*. Cp. *himself*, *themselves*, *itself*, *oneself*.

Probably *self* had already come to be considered a noun; it certainly was often so treated from the fourteenth century downwards:—

“As *thi self* likyth.”

CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, pt. I. sec. 21.

“*Myself* hath been the whip.”

CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 5757.

“Thy manner is to muse and [to] devyse,  
So that sometime *myself* may carry me  
*Myself* knoweth not where; and I assure ye  
So hath *myself* done now.”

HEYWOOD, *The Play of the Wether*.

Cp. the use of “*myself*,” &c. for “*I myself*,” &c.

When *self* was fully established as a noun, it dropped its old plural *e*, and took *s*, as *ourselves*, &c.

For some time it was without a plural, as *ourself*, *themself*, &c.

One's *self*, (or more properly *oneself*), is quite a modern form. In Elizabethan English we find *a man's self* = *one's self*.

In O.E., *ana* (the nom. of *ān*, one,) was used like *self*. In M.E., we find *one* used for *self* with the possessive pronoun, as, “be myne *one*,” by myself (*Morte Arthure*, ed. Brock, p. 125) = “by me *one*.”

An old meaning of **self** was *same*. Cp. "the *self* truth" (Becon), and "**self-same**."

"The *same self* time."

BALE'S *Works*, Park. Soc. p. 23.

"For other ruffians, as their fancies wrought,  
With *self-same* hand, *self* reasons, and *self* right,  
Would shark on you."

SIR T. MORE, *ed.* Shak. Soc. p. 27.

### III. Adjective Pronouns.

133. The Adjective Pronouns, sometimes called Possessive Pronouns, were formed from the genitive case of the personal pronouns, and were declined like ordinary adjectives.

In modern English the possessive pronouns, though only used adjectively, are identical in form with the old genitives of the personal pronouns.

*Sing.*—**Mine**, **my** ; **thine**, **thy** ; **his**, **hers**, **its**.

*Plural.*—**Our**, **ours** ; **your**, **yours** ; **their**, **theirs**.

**Mine**, **my** ; **thine**, **thy**. The original forms were *mine* and *thine* (O.E. *mīn*, *thīn*). The final *e* is no inflexion, and only marks the length of the preceding vowel.

The *-n* in *mine* and *thine* is an old genitive suffix.

**My** and **thy** are formed from *mine* and *thine* by the loss of *n*, as *no* from *none*, *a* from *an*.

**Mine** and **thine** are occasionally used before a noun beginning with a vowel, or *h* ; but this usage is confined to poetry and the *solemn* style.

It is very common in the Bible, and in our old dramatists :—

“ Give every man *thine* ear, but few *thy* voice.”

*Hamlet*, 1. 3.

“ Conduct me to *mine* host.”—*Macbeth*, 1. 7.

Sometimes *mine* and *thine* are used when they follow the substantive, as,

“ *Lordyng myne.*”—*Gest. Rom.* p. 32.

“ Master *mine.*”

*Merry Wives of Windsor*, i. 1. 163.

**Hi-s** is a true genitive of the root **hi**.

**He-r** (O.E. **hi-re**), contains a genitive suffix fem. **-r**.

**Its** (O.E. *his*). This is quite a modern form, not much older than the end of the sixteenth century. It does not occur in the Bible; it was not used by Spenser, rarely by Shakspeare and Bacon, but is more frequently employed by Milton, and had quite established itself in Dryden's time as the regular form. The true genitive of *it* is *his*.

“ Put up again thy sword into *his* place.”—*Matt.* xxvi. 52.

“ Learning has *his* infancy, when *it* is but beginning, and almost childish; then *his* youth, when *it* is luxuriant and juvenile; then *his* strength of years, when *it* is solid and reduced; and lastly, *his* old age, when it waxeth dry and exhaust.”—BACON, *Essays*, 58.

In the fourteenth century we find **hit** = **its**. This form was kept up as late as the seventeenth century.

“ Of *it* own accord.”—*Levit.* xxv. 5.

“ *It* knighthood shall do worse....it shall fright all *it* friends.”

BEN JONSON, *The Silent Woman*, ii. 3.

The **own** = *its own*, occurs as early as the fourteenth century, and was in use in the sixteenth century.

“ And albeit their trumpery be built up, and reared as high as the sky, yea even in a moment, and as it were of *the own* self, falleth it down again.”—*Translation of Jewel*, ed. Jelf, p. 153.

**Ou-r, you-r** (O.E. *ur-e, eow-er*.)

These forms contain a suffix **-r**, which belongs also to the genitive plural of adjectives. See note on *Alderliest*, § 111, p. 88.

**Their** has this genitive suffix **-r**, which also appears in O.E. *hi-re, heo-re*; M.E. *he-r*. See table, p. 106.

#### IV. Independent or Absolute Possessives.

134. **Mine, thine, his, hers, its, ours, yours, theirs**, are used without a following noun.

“ Be *thine* despair and sceptred care ;  
To triumph and to die are *mine*.”

GRAY, *The Bard*.

**Ours, yours, theirs** are *double genitives*, containing a genitive plural suffix **-r** + a singular suffix **-s**. **Hers** is also a double genitive.

These genitives in **-s** are not found in the oldest English ; they made their first appearance in the Northern dialects of the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, and are due to Scandinavian influence. Cp. Swed. (old style) *mins, dins*, = mine, thine ; *vårs* = ours, *ers*, = yours.

The more ordinary forms in the Southern dialects were *hire, hir* (hers), *oure, our* (ours), &c. Sometimes we find *ouren* = ours, *heren* = theirs.

#### II.—DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

135. The Demonstratives are **the, that, this, such, so, same, yon, (yond, yonder)**.

**The** (usually called the **Definite Article**), was formerly declined like an adjective for number, gender, and case ; it is now indeclinable.



## SINGULAR.

*Masculine.*

	M.E.	E.E.	O.E.
Nom.	the	the	se
Gen.		the-s, tha-s	thæ-s
Dat.	the	tha-n, the-n	tha-m, thæ-m
Acc.	the	tha-n, tho-n	tha-ne
Inst.	the	the	thî, thê

*Feminine.*

Nom.	the	theo, the	seo
Gen.		the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Dat.	the	the-re, tha-re	thæ-re
Acc.	the	tha, theo, tho, th-	

*Neuter.*

Nom.	}		the, that		the-t, tha-t		thæ-t
Acc.							
Gen.							
Dat.							
			<i>like the masculine.</i>				

## PLURAL.

Nom.	the, tho, tha, thai	tha, theo, the	thâ
Gen.	the	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-ra, thæ-ra
Dat.	the, (tha, tho,	tha-re, the-re, the-r	thâ-m, thæ-m
Acc.	thai)	tha, tho, the	thâ

In the second period the article is flexionless in Northern writers.

The old form *tho*, the plural of *the*, is used as late as Warner's time. *They* is occasionally found in Tudor English as the plural of *the*.

**The**, before comparatives, as, "*the more the merrier*," is a remnant of the old instrumental case *thî*. Cp. O.E. *thî mare* = Lat. *eo magis*. It must be parsed as an adverb when used in this way.



136. **That** was originally the neuter of **the**. In Northern dialects it replaced the demonstrative *thilk*, and was used before nouns of all genders. Its plurals were (1) **tho** (or *tha*) the pl. of the def. art. ; (2) **thos** (or *thas*) the old plural of **this**.

The **t** in **that** is the old neuter suffix. Cp. **it**. **what**.

**Those** (O.E. *thās*), was at first the plural of **this**. It had established itself, as early as the middle of the fourteenth century, as the plural of *that*.

137. **This** was originally neuter. As late as 1387 we find **thes** (masc.), **theos** (fem.), **this** (neuter), Lat. *hic, hæc, hoc*.

*This* is more emphatic than *the*, and was originally equivalent to *the-the*. Cp. Fr. *ce-ci, ce-la*.

**These** (O.E. *thæs, thās*, E.E. *thas, theos, thos, thes, these*, M.E. *thes, thees, thise, these*).

The final **e** in *these*, marks the length of the preceding vowel; it is not an inflexion.

The form *these* in M.E. may have been a new plural formed from *this*, and therefore commonly spelt *thise*.

**This** and **that** sometimes replace the former and the latter (O.E. *se ærra* and *se æftera*) see § 116, p. 95.

**This** usually refers to the *latter* of two things mentioned, **that** to the *former*.

“ Two principles in human nature reign ;  
Self-love to urge, and Reason to restrain ;  
Nor *this* a good, nor *that* a bad we call.”

POPE, *Essay on Man*, ii. 2.

138. **Such** (O.E. *swilc*, E.E. *swilch*, M.E. *swilk*, *swich*, *swuch*, *sich*, *such*) is a compound of *so* (O.E. *swā*), and *like* (O.E. *lic*). **Such like** is pleonastic.

We find compounds of *such* in *some such* and *none such*.

139. **Thilk** (O. E. *thylc*) = the like. Cp. Lat. *ta-lis*.

The **like** is used often as a substitute for the older *thilk*.

140. **Ilk** (O. E. *ylc*) = that like, same.

141. **Otherlike** and **other the like** are found in the seventeenth century.

“Chaffe, straw and *otherlike* mullocke.”

HOLLAND, *Pliny*, 601.

142. **So** (O.E. *swā*), is often used as a substitute, for *such*.

“I am wiser than *so*” *i.e.* a baby.—FORD.

143. **Same** (M.E. *same*, Gothic *sama*). In the oldest period *same* is a conjunction, as *swa same swa* = the same as; *sam—sam* = whether—or.

**Same** is joined to **the**, **this**, **that**, and **self** (*e.g.* **self-same**). See § 132, p. 112).

144. **Yon**, **yond**, **yonder** (O.E. *geon*, Goth. *jains*, Ger. *jener*) = that, *ille*.

“Near *yonder* copse.”

GOLDSMITH, *Deserted Village*, l. 136.

“Beside *yon* straggling fence.”—*Ib.* l. 193.

**Yon** is a derivative from the demonstrative root *ge* (or *ja*).

In O.E. *geon* = *ille*; *geond* = *illic* and *trans*.

**Yonder** (adv.) is in Gothic *jaindre*.

In M.E. we find *yon a* like *such a*, *each a*, &c., from which probably has arisen *yond-er*.

The Scotch still use *yon* substantively.

“*Yonder's* a bad man.”

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, II. p. 400.

“*Yon* er theves.”—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4890.

“*3onder* ar theves.”—*Ib.* F.

“*3ondir* be theves.”—*Ib.* T.

"Bote take we him ute of *3on* den,  
And selle we him to *3one* chapmen."

*C. Mundi*, G. II. 4185-6.

"Take we him out of *3onder* den  
And sel him forth to *3one* chapmen."—*Ib.* F.

"Take we him out of *that* den  
And selle we him to *those* chapmen."—*Ib.* T.

### III.—INTERROGATIVE PRONOUNS.

145. The Interrogatives are **who**; **which**, **what**, **whether**, with their indefinite compounds **whoever**, **whatever**, **whichever**.

146. **Who** (masc. and fem.) is only used of persons. Its neuter is **what**.

		O.E.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <b>who</b>	<b>what</b>	hwâ	hwæt
Gen. <b>whose</b>	<b>whose</b>	hwæs	hwæs
Dat. <b>whom</b>	<b>what</b>	hwam, hwæm	hwæm
Acc. <b>whom</b>	<b>what</b>	hwone, hwæne	hwæt
Inst.	[why]	hwî	hwî.

E.E.		M.E.	
Masc. and Fem.	Neut.	Masc. and Fem.	Neut.
Nom. hwa, wha, wa	hwat, hwet, what, whæt	wha, hwo, wo, ho, quo	what, wat, huet
Gen. hwas, whas, was	as masc.	whas, whos, wos, hos	as masc.
Dat. hwam, whan,	as masc.	whom, wham, wom	as masc.
Acc. hwan, wan, hwam, wham	hwat, whæt, what	whom, wan, won	what, wat, huet

**Who-se** was originally of all genders. It can be used absolutely, as, "*whose* is the crime?" The **s** in *whose* is a genitive suffix, as in *hi-s*.

**Who-m** is a dative like **hi-m**. It is now also accusative, the older acc. *hwone* having been replaced by it in the thirteenth century.

147. **Wha-t** was originally neuter (like *tha-t*), and never masc. or fem. It got its present usage as early as the beginning of the thirteenth century in the Northern dialects.

**What for** = *what sort of*.

“*What's he for a man.*”

PEELE, ed. Dyce, p. 383.

148. **Whe-ther** (O.E. *hwæther*, M.E. *whether*, *wher*), which of the two.

“God cupid, or the keeper, I know not *whether*,  
Unto my cost and charges brought you thither.”

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Knight  
of the Burning Pestle*, i. 2.

“*Whether* of them twain did the will of his father.”

*Matt.* xxi. 31.

For the suffix **-ther**, see *Three* § 118, p. 97.

We find in the seventeenth century *whether-so-ever*; in the fourteenth *whether-so*, *whether-ever*.

149. **Which** (O.E. *hwilc*; E.E. *whulc*, *whulch*, *wuch*; M.E. *wich*, *wuch*, *which*, *whilk*) contains the **wh** of *who*, *what*, and **-lc** = O.E. *līc* = *like*. Cp. *qua-lis*.

“Tele us *hwuch* is helle.”—O.E. *Hom.* i. p. 249.

= Tell us *what* hell is *like*.

“Moyses seide, Lord *wuch* is þi face, let me hit  
iseo.”—*Vernon MS.*

## IV.—RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

150. The Relative Pronouns are **who**, **which**, **what**, **that**, **as**.

In the oldest period, **who**, **which**, and **what**, were not relative, but interrogative pronouns; **whose**, and **whom**, were established as relatives as early as the thirteenth century; but **who** was much later in getting a relative force, and did not come into common use before the end of the sixteenth century.

151. **Who**, as a relative, is not recognized by Ben Jonson, who speaks of "one relative *which*."

In 'Palladius on *Husbandrie*,' A.D. 1420, we find *who* used as a relative with a neuter antecedent.

**Who** (= he who, whoever) replaced the E.E. *the the*, or *the that* = he that.

"*Who* steals my purse steals trash."—*Othello*, iii. 3. 15.

In this sense **who** = *quisquis*, is an indefinite pronoun.

In M.E. **the** is sometimes joined to **whose** and **whom**.

**Who** (and its cases) are often followed in M.E. by **that**.

152. **Which** at present relates only to neuter antecedents, but this is comparatively a modern restriction.

"Our Father *which* art in heaven."

In M.E. **which** is frequently joined to **the**, **that**, **as**:—*the which*, *which that*, *which as*, &c.

153. **That**, originally the *neuter singular* relative, now agrees with singular and plural antecedents of all genders.

**That**, during the twelfth century, began to supply the place of the *indeclinable* relative **the**, and in the fourteenth century it was the ordinary, though not the



only relative. In the sixteenth century, which often supplied its place; and in the seventeenth century, who was frequently employed instead of it. At a later period (Addison's time), that had again come into fashion, and had almost driven who and which out of use.

**That** (O.E. *ðætte* = *ðæt þe*), is sometimes used in the sense of **that which**, or **what**.

"We speak *that* we do know, and testify *that* we have seen."  
*St. John*, iii. 11.

**154. What** = *that which*, refers to singular and neuter antecedents. Its true genitive is **whose**.

"Nebuchadnezzar, the king, made an *image* of gold, *whose* height was threescore cubits." — *Dan.* iii. 1. See Milton's *Par. Lost.* Bk. i. l. 2.

*What that, that what, what as*, are archaic compounds.

**155. Who-so, what-so, who-so-ever, what-so-ever, which-so-ever**, are indefinite, like the Latin *quisquis, quicunque*.

O.E. *swâ hwa swâ* = E.E. *wha-swa, wha-se*, M.E. *who-so*; O.E. *swâ hwylc swâ* = which so, whichsoever.

In the sixteenth century we often find **what-som-ever** = M.E. *what-sum-ever*; *sum* = *as, so* is Danish.

"To *quat* contre *sum* that thou wend."

*C. Mundi*, C. l. 1149.

"To *quat* contre *so* thu wend."

*Ib.* G.

**156. Who-ever, what-ever, which-ever**, are relative and interrogative. They do not occur in the oldest English.

**157. As** (O.E. *eall-swa*; E.E. *alswa, else*; M.E. *ase, as, als, also*), has a relative force after *such, same, that*.

**Such** — *as* = O.E. *swylc — swylc* = *such — such*. E.E. *swilc — als*.



## V.—INDEFINITE PRONOUNS.

158. The Indefinite Pronouns are *who, what, some, one, any, none, no, aught, naught, each, every, either, neither, other, else, enough, sundry, certain, several.*

159. *Who* = *anyone, some one*, has an indefinite sense in some old expressions :

“ Not as *who* saith by authority,  
But by the way of intreaty.”

*The 4 P.P. in O.E. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, i. 373.

“ As *who* should say.”—*Macbeth*, III. 6.

160. *What* is indefinite in

“ I’ll tell you *what* now of the devil.”

MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr*, iii. 3.

*What not, what else* (M.E. *elles what*).

In O.E. *hwa, &-hwa* = *anyone*, *hwæt, &-hwæt* = *aught, anything*. In the thirteenth century we find *what* treated as a substantive in *an hwæt* = *one thing*, which gave rise to E.E. *sum-what, other-what* ; M.E. *much-what, little-what, many-what*, modern English *somewhat*.

There may have been some confusion between *aught, wight* ; and *whit*. See § 164, p. 125.

“ A strawnge *watt* ” (= *wight*.)

*Coventry Mysteries*, p. 294

“ I am a fulle gret *watt*.”—*Townley Mysteries*, p. 8.

“ Much *what*.”—*Sir Gawayne*, ed. Morris, p. 41.

“ A little *what*.”—WICLIFFE, *John* vi. 7 ; and

SPENSER, *Shep. Cal.* (July).

161. *Some* (O.E. *sum* ; M.E. *som, some, aliquis, quelque*), is both singular and plural, but is mostly used before plural nouns. It has the force of the indefinite *a, a certain, some one* ; *some—some* = *one—another, some—others*.

**Other-some** = *some others*, is used by Shakespeare in the *Comedy of Errors*, iii. 2.

‘Framing unto some unwholesome sores plaisters, and applying *other some* where no sore is.’—HOOKER, v. I. I.

In O.E. and E.E. *sum* was declined like the strong declension of adjectives, see § 112, p. 89.

In M.E. we find pl. *sume*, *summe*, *some*.

As late as the fourteenth century we find *some* used in apposition with a pronoun or noun, as *sume we* = some of us.

For *some* = *an*, cp. the following versions of the same line:—

“Thar-bi groues *sum* apell tre.”—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 2877.

“Tharby grows *an* appel tre.”—*Ib.* T.

Compounds of *some* are *somebody*, *something*, *someone*, *somewhat*.

**Somebody** seems to have got into the language through the use of *body* for *wight* (person).

“*A bodye* thynketh *himselfe* well emended in his substaunce and ryches, to whom hath happened some good goubbe of money.”—ERASMUS, *Apophthegms*, englished by Udall, ed. 1542, p. 14a.

No *body* occurs in *Piers Plowman*.—B. xvi. 83, p. 292.

**Something** has in a great measure replaced *somewhat*. This usage is as early as the thirteenth century.

**Some one** arose in the early part of the fourteenth century, and replaced *sum man*; it is also used where in M.E. *oon*, *one* = *some one* was employed.

**All and some** (M.E. *al and sum*) = *all and one*, *all and singular*, is used by Dryden.

“— you must march both *all and some*.”—PEELE, *Edw. I.*

In the sixteenth century it often appears as *whole and some*, *all or some*.

Sometimes we meet with a redundancy of indefinites:—

“And the nature of all creatures is contained in *some certain one* place.”—BECON, *Prayers*, p. 273.

“Thus saith Pope Alexander, Gregory, John Clement, or *some such other like*.”—PILKINGTON, p. 20.

162. **One** (O.E. *ân*, M.E. *on*, *oon*) is the numeral **one** with extended usage. It has a genitive **one's**, and a plural **ones**.

In the O.E. and M.E. *one* was declined according to the strong declension. See § 112, p. 89.

It has various usages :—

(1) In "*one* says" it replaces the O.E. *man*, M.E. *me* (Ger. *man*, Fr. *on*). This use is as early as the fifteenth century.

(2) It has an indefinite sense like the Latin *quidam*, Greek *τις*, especially before proper nouns, as, "*one* Simon a tanner" (*Acts* ix. 43). This use is found in E.E. See *St. Juliana*, p. 5.

"*One* in a certain place testifieth."—*Heb.* ii. 6.

"Also *oon* told hym that oon of his frendes hadde ispoke euel by hym."—*Trevisa*, iii. 317.

See *Piers Plowman*, B. xx. 157, 161, p. 374.

(3) It is equivalent to *some one*, see *King Lear*, i. 3.

(4) It is also used as a noun = *person*, *thing* (M.E. *wight*, *thing*). This usage is found in the fourteenth century.

(5) It is used instead of repeating the noun.

(6) **The one** = *the first*. See § 121, p. 99.

(7) **One** = *the same*, as, "*it's all one*;" "*one and the same*."

For **one** we sometimes use *a man*, *they*, *you*, *people*.

In M.E. *me* = *men*, is used for *one* (Fr. *on*); but with a singular verb.

"The vyne also *thai* sayen hath that nature,  
That vynes yf *me* brenne, or white or blake,  
And kest hem into wyne, *me* may be sure  
The wyne coloure after the vynes take."

PALLADIUS, *Husbandrie*, p. 200.

The expression as one that = M.E. *as he that*; E.E. *as the that*; *as a wiht that*; *as thing that*.—See *Juliana*, pp. 4, 5, 8, 20, 21.

163. **None**, **no** = O.E. *nân* = *ne ân* = *not one*.

**No** is formed from **none** by the dropping off of **ne**. (Cp. **my** and **mine**). **None** is used absolutely, that is, without a following noun: "I have **none**."

In **none** other (*Acts* iv. 12; *Deut.* v. 7), we have the M.E. use of *none* for *no* before a vowel.

**Other-noon** (Cp. *other some*) occurs in M.E.

**No one** = *not one*, is tautological, (being for *ne one one*) but it evidently replaces M.E. *no man*, *no wight*. Compounds of **no** are **nothing**, **nobody**. Ford has **nobody's** else for **nobody** else's.

164. **Aught** = anything (O.E. *âwiht*, *âwuht*, *auht*, *ah*). It contains the prefix *â* = *ever*, *aye*; and the root *ught* = *wight*, *whit* (O.E. *wiht*, *wuht*, *uht*), creature, thing, something.

**Naught** (O.E. *nâwiht*, *nawuht*, *nauht*, *naht*, *neaht*, *noht*), and **not** (M.E. *nat*, *not*, *noght*), are negative forms of **ought**.

**Awhit** is another form of **ought**. Cp. *anywhit*, *everywhit*. As *not* = *nowhit* = *naught*, *not a whit* is pleonastic.

That **nawight** = *noght* = *not* is seen from the following versions of the same line.

"Scho said, ne herd yee *na wight* hou."—*C. Mundi*, C. l. 4396.

"Scho said, ne herd 3e *noght* how."—*Ib.* G.

"She seide, herde 3e *not* how."—*Ib.* T.

In the following passages **nawight** is replaced by **nothing**, **nothing**.

"Ne sal thou *nawight* thar-wit win."—*Ib.* C. l. 919.

"Ne sal thou *naþinge* thar-with wyn."—*Ib.* F.

**Whit** = **ought**, in

"The devil have they *whit* else."

THERSITES, *O. E. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, I. p. 428.

165. **Any** (O.E. *æn-ig*; E.E. *æni*, *æi*, *ci*; M.E. *eny*, *ony*, *any* = *ullus*), has an adjective form like *dirt-y*, and the stem is *an* = *one*. The negative of **any** is **none**. In O.E. and E.E. we had a true negative, *nænig* = *nullus*.

In O.E. **any** was declined like *one*. A plural in *-e* was in use in the fourteenth century.

The genitive *anies* = *anyone's* occurs in Warner's *Albion's England*, p. 200.

Compounds of **any** are *anyone*, *anybody* (M.E. *any wight*, *any persone*, *any man*), *anything*.

166. **Each** = O.E. *æ-lc* = *â-ge-lic*; E.E. *elc*, *elch*, *euch*; M.E. *uch*, *ych*, *ech*, *ilk*.

**Each** is a compound of *â*, *ever*, and *lîc*, *like*. (Cp. *which*, *such*, &c.). In E.E. and M.E. **each** was followed by *an*, *a*, *on*, (= *one*). This use has survived in **each one**.

**Each other** besides being equivalent to *each the other*, see § 170, signifies *every second*, *each alternate*.

"Living and dying, *each other day*."

HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 2.

167. **Every** (E.E. *æver-ælc*; M.E. *ever-ich*, *ever-ilk*), is a compound of **ever** and **each**. It does not exist in the oldest period.

**Every**, as late as the seventeenth century, had a substantive use as in the older periods.

"*Every* of your wishes."—*Antony and Cleop.* ii. 2.

"*Everich* of hem his lyf left for a wed."

LYDGATE, *The Storie of Thebes*, ii. l. 1186.

M.E. *evrichon*, *everilkan*, (cp. *each one*) survives in **everyone**.

*Everybody* and *everything* are recent formations.

*Ever-any* existed in the thirteenth century, and is used by Fabyan (ed. Ellis, p. 251), *evereither* is used by Pecoock. (*Spec. Eng.* ed. Skeat, n. 55, l. 102.)



*Ever-each* is like *no one*, a pleonastic expression, which arose when the origin of *every* was forgotten.—(See Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 601).

168. *Either* (O.E. *æghwæther*, *ægther*, *â-hwæther*, *âwther*; E.E. *æither*, *aither*, *either*, *other*, *owther*; M.E. *either*, *ayther*, *other*, *outher*), is an old comparative form (see § 148) containing the prefix *â*, *ever*, and the suffix, *-ther*. It signifies “any one of two.” Its negative is *neither*.

*Either* has a possessive form *either's*.

“Then *either's* love was *either's* life.”

WARNER, *Albion's England*, p. 57.

“*Eytheres* will.”—*Piers Plowman*, B. xiii. 348, p. 228.

169. *Other* (O.E. *ô-ther* = one of two, second and other), contains the root *ô* = one, and the comparative suffix *-ther*. (See § 121, p. 99).

*Other* originally followed the strong declension of adjectives. Its plural was *othre*; when the final *e* became silent, a new plural *others* was formed.

*Other* for some time was used as a plural, both in M.E. and in the seventeenth century. Cp. *other some* = *some others*.

*Another*, *any other*, *none other*, *some other*, are forms that arose in the thirteenth century.

*Other the like* = M.E. *otherlike*, occurs in Hooker, v. 1. 3.

170. *One another*, *each other*, are sometimes called reciprocal pronouns, but they are not compounds. They love *one another*; they love *each other* = they love—*one* (loves) *another*; they love—*each* (loves) the *other*.

171. *Else* (O.E. *elles*), is the genitive case of an old pronominal root *el* = *other* (Cp. Lat. *alius*).

We find its pronominal character kept up in what else, O.E. *elles hwæt*. Warner (*Albion's England*, p. 178) has *elswhat*, cp. aught else, nothing else.



Becon constantly uses *what other thing* for *what else*. So in Hooker, v. xx. 6.

“For *what else* is the Law but the Gospel foreshewed?”

“*What other* the Gospel than the Law fulfilled?”

Other where = *elsewhere* in Hooker, v. xi. 12.

*Else* is used substantively in the sense of *something else* in the following passage.

“What’s that she mumbles? The devil’s paternoster? Would it were *else*.”—FORD, *Witch of Edmonton*, ii. 1.

172. Some demonstratives become indefinites. Cp. *this and that*; *such and such*; he knew not *which was which*; *ilk* and *ilk* in the Ayenbite, p. 54; *he* and *he* = one — another.—*Pier’s Plowman*, B. p. 226; CHAUCER’S *Knight’s Tale*, ll. 1756—1761.

“*This* would, I have, and *that*, and then I desire to be *such* and *such*.”—(Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 185.

“*One* takes upon him temperance, holiness, *another* austerity, a *third* an affected kind of simplicity, when, as indeed *he*, and *he*, and *he*, and the rest are ‘hypocrites, ambidexters,’ outsides, so many turning pictures, a lion on the one side, a lamb on the other.”—*Ib.* p. 34.

“In with the polax preseth *he* and *he*;

By hynde the maste begynneth *he* to fle.”

CHAUCER, ed. Morris, v. p. 296.

“Then was I dubde as true precise,

And faithful by and by;

And none was compted hoate enough

Save *he* and *he* and I.—DRANT’S *Horace*.

See Palladius, *Husbandrie*, p. 126, l. 610; Burton, *Anat. of Mel.* ed. 1845, p. 8.

173. Enough (O.E. *genðh*, E.E. *inoh*, *inoz*, M.E. *inough*, *ynough*, *anough*, *inow*, *enogh*.)

We sometimes meet with the plural, *enow*, *anow*, (M.E. *inowe*, *anowe*).

174. The words *sundry*, *divers*, *certain*, and *several*, have acquired more or less the force of indefinite pronouns.

“They had their *several* (= separate) partitions for heathen nations, their *several* for the people ..., their *several* for men, their *several* for women, their *several* for the priests, and for the high priest alone their *several*.”—

HOOKE, v. xiv. 1.

## CHAPTER X.

## THE VERB.

175. Verbs may be classified, according to their meaning, as **Transitive** and **Intransitive**.

**Transitive** verbs express an action which does not terminate in the agent, but passes over to an object ; as, "he *learns* his lesson." **Transitive** verbs are used **reflexively** ; as, "*he killed himself*;" "*sit thee down*," and **reciprocally**, as "*they helped one another*."

**Intransitive** verbs express an action that is confined to the agent, as, "corn *grows*." Some intransitive verbs, by the addition of a preposition, become transitive ; as, "the man *laughs at* the boy ;" "he *talks of* himself." Sometimes verbs compounded with prepositions become transitive ; cp. *come* and *overcome*, *speak* and *bespeak*, *go* and *forgo*, &c.

176. Some intransitive verbs have a causative form which is always transitive, as,

Intrans.

fall

sit

rise

Trans.

fell

set

raise

As we are not now able to form new causative verbs, we are often obliged to give a *causative meaning* to an intransitive verb, and it then takes an object; as, "*he flies his kite*," "*he ran the knife into his leg*." Intransitive verbs may take a noun of kindred meaning as object; as, "*he lived a good life*," "*he died a horrible death*."

177. Verbs used with the third person only are called **Impersonal** verbs, as "*me thinks*," "*it rains*," &c. These verbs were much more numerous in the older stages of the language. (See Syntax of **Impersonal Verbs**).

178. The verb affirms action, or existence of a subject under certain conditions or relations, called **voice, mood, tense, number, person**. In some languages the verbal root undergoes a change of form to express these various relations.

### Voice.

179. Transitive verbs have two voices, the **Active** and the **Passive**. When a verb is used in the **Active Voice**, the subject of the verb represents the actor, or agent; as, "*the lion killed the elephant*." A verb is said to be in the **Passive Voice** where the subject denotes the object to which the action is directed; as, "*the elephant was killed by the lion*."

In English we have no inflexions for the passive voice, as in Latin and Greek, but express the same notion by means of the passive participle and the verb *to be*. We have a very good substitute for the

passive form in the use of an indefinite pronoun for the subject of the verb ; as, "*somebody killed the boy*" = the boy was killed ; "*one knows not how it happened,*" = it is not known how it happened ; "*they say,*" = it is said. We can also express the passive voice by means of the verb *be*, and a verbal noun ; as, "*the book is printing*" (= "*the book is a printing*" = "*the book is in printing*") = "*the book is being printed.*"

The passive voice has grown out of reflexive verbs. The *r* in *amo-r* is supposed to be a corruption of the pronoun *se*. Cp. Fr. *s'appeler*, "to be called." Of the Teutonic languages only the Scandinavian dialects have formed a passive voice by means of the suffix *st* = *sk* = *sik* = *self*, Lat. *se* ; we have instances of this in *busk*, "to prepare oneself," "to be ready," and *bask* from *bake*.

## Mood.

180. **Mood** has reference to the manner or mode in which anything is predicated of the subject.

The **Indicative** mood makes a direct assertion, or asks some direct question about a fact ; as, "*John has a book,*" "*Has John a book?*"

The **Subjunctive** mood expresses some condition or supposition, as "I may go, if the day *be* fine ;" "Love not sleep, lest thou *come* to poverty ;" "*Had* I the book, I would give it to you ;" "Though he *slay* me, yet will I trust in Him."

As the **Subjunctive** mood depends upon the construction of sentences, its peculiarities belong to Syntax. *The Subjunctive is almost gone out of use ;* its place is supplied by auxiliary words.

The **Imperative** mood expresses a command, entreaty, desire, request, &c., as, "*follow me*," "*grant our request*."

In this mood we employ the verbal root without any inflexion. It has only one person, the second (singular and plural). In the oldest southern English the plural took the termination *-th*.

Some languages inflect the imperative mood for all persons. We have a substitute for the first and third persons in the use of *let*; "*let me call*," "*let him call*." In old English *let* = cause. Formerly the Subjunctive had the sense of the Imperative, traces of which we have in such expressions as,

"But *fall* I first  
Amongst my sorrows, ere my treacherous hand,  
Touch holy things."

BEAUMONT AND FLETCHER, *The Maid's Tragedy*, Act. iii. Sc. i.

"My soul turn from them, *turn we* to survey."

GOLDSMITH, *Trav.* 165.

"*Fall* he that must beneath his rival's arms."—POPE.

The **Infinitive** mood is an abstract noun, and has no inflexions for voice, mood, &c.; as, "*to see*," "*to know*." See p. 164 for a fuller treatment of the Infinitive Mood.

**Participles** are verbal adjectives, and always refer to some noun in the sentence. Many adjectives take a participial form in *-ing*, or *-ed*, or *-en*. See § 76, p. 59.

"Thou to the *untamed* horse  
Didst use the *conquering* bit;  
And here the *well-shaped* oar,  
By *skilled* hands deftly *plied*,



Still leapeth through the sea,  
*Following* in wondrous guise  
 The fair Nereids with their hundred feet."

PLUMPTRE'S *Œdipus at Colonus*.

A Verbal Noun in *-ing* (O.E. *-ung*), often corresponds to a Latin *gerund*, as "he thanked him for *saving* his life." Here *saving* is not a participle, because "*for saving*" represents an older, "*for the saving of*."

"Thonkyng him *for the saving of* his life."

*Gesta Rom.* p. 7.

"*In knowing of* the tid of day."

CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, p. 19.

"Concerning the means of *procuring* unity, men must beware that in the *procuring* or *muniting of* religious unity, they do not dissolve and deface the laws of charity and of human society."—BACON, *Essays*, 3.

Here *procuring* = *the procuring of*.

In such expressions as a "*walking stick*," "the *church-going* bell," the words *walking* and *going* are verbal nouns. In the earlier periods these nouns in *-ing* were preceded by various prepositions—an, a, on, in, at, to.

"He sent Ancus his sones *an hontyng*."

*Trevisa*, iii. 87.

"We han a wyndowe *a wirchyng*."

*Piers Plowman*, B. p. 34.

"He fel *on slepyng*."

*Generides*, 201.

"While it was *in doynge*."

*Trevisa*, iii. 97.

"While it was *in workyng*."

HARDYNG.

"*At huntynge* he sleugh his father."

*Ib.*



"If she were going *to hanging*, no gallows should part us."

MASSINGER, *Virgin Martyr*, II. 3.

"Hou hue Absolon *to hongynge* brouhte."

*Piers Plowman*, C. p. 64.

These verbal nouns may take an adjective or a demonstrative before them. They may also be used like an ordinary noun as the subject or object of a sentence.

## Tense.

181. Verbs undergo a modification to indicate time. These forms are called **Tenses**. In the oldest period the verb was inflected for the present and perfect tenses only.

There was in O.E. no distinct form for the future, its place being supplied by the present. Cp. "he *goes* to town to-morrow." There were, however, traces of a past indefinite tense formed by the verb *was*, and the imperfect participle. The perfect and past tenses were expressed by one form.

In the thirteenth century we find the modern future expressed by the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*. In the fourteenth century we find (1) the present imperfect (continuous) formed by the verb *be*, and the present participle; (2) the perfect expressed by the auxiliary *have* and the passive participle; as well as the emphatic form of the present and past tenses, with the auxiliary *do*.

The growth of new forms render a fuller classification of the tenses necessary. The three simple tenses, **Present**, **Past**, and **Future**, have four varieties, (1) **indefinite**, (2) **imperfect**, (3) **perfect**, (4) **perfect continuous**.

The fourth variety belongs only to the *Active Voice*.

TABLE OF TENSES.

Tense.	Indefinite.	Imperfect and Continuous.	Perfect.	Perfect and Continuous.
Present	I praise	I am praising	I have praised	I have been praising
Past	I praised	I was praising	I had praised	I had been praising
Future	I shall praise	I shall be praising	I shall have praised	I shall have been praising

For **I praise** and **I praised** we sometimes use **I do praise**, **I did praise**, which are mostly emphatic. (See **Do** under the heading, **Auxiliary Verbs**.) In the modern stage of the language verbs undergo change of form only for the **present** and **past** tenses.

### Number.

182. Verbs are modified to express the **number** and **person** of the subject. There are two **numbers**, **Singular** and **Plural**; and three **persons** in each number, **First**, **Second**, and **Third**. Inflexions for number have all disappeared, except in the verb *to be*. The person-endings are preserved only in the singular number of the present and past tenses of the Indicative mood.

For the origin of the inflexions that mark person, see **Verbal Inflexions**, § 200, p. 159.

### Conjugation.

183. Verbs are classified, according to their mode of expressing the past tense, into **Strong** and **Weak Verbs**.

**Strong Verbs** form their past tense by change of the root vowel; nothing is added to the root, as, **fall**, **fell**, **fallen**. All passive participles of strong verbs once ended in **-en**; but this ending has been dropped in very many passive participles of this conjugation.

**Weak Verbs** form their past tense by adding to the root of the present the letter **-d**, or **-t**. The vowel

*e* sometimes serves to unite the suffix -d to the root. The passive participles of Weak Verbs end in -d, or -t.

Verbs that have vowel change in the past tense, as well as the suffix -d, are not strong verbs. The vowel change in *told*, *bought*, *taught*, has not the same origin as that in strong verbs.

The strong conjugation includes the oldest verbs in the language. Because this process of vowel change is no longer a regular one, we call these verbs *irregular*.

Very many strong verbs have disappeared from the language : many have gone over altogether to the weak conjugation ; some have become weak in the past tense, others in the passive participle.

A few have lost their past tense and have taken the passive participle instead, as *bit* from *bitten* instead of *boot* (= he did bite), while others again have lost their old past participle, and have taken instead of it the past tense, as, *stood* for *standen*.

## Strong Verbs.

### ORIGIN OF VOWEL CHANGE IN THE PAST TENSE.

184. The oldest mode of forming the perfect tense in the Indo-European languages was by reduplication. as, *πέ-φενγα*, &c., Lat. *pe-pendi*, &c. We have only one verb of this class in modern English, the verb *did*. Cp. Lat. *dedi*.

In the oldest stages of the language, reduplicated forms were more numerous, as *hêht* (our *hight*), *called*, from *hatan*, *to call*. The Gothic *haihait*, shows the reduplication more plainly than the O.E. *hêht*. On comparing the Gothic verb *haihald* with the O.E. *heold*, and our *held*, we see that *vowel change* has

arisen out of an original reduplication ; but we are not able to trace all the past tenses of strong verbs to an earlier reduplicated form. Those that can be so traced form a class by themselves, which we shall call the *First Division*, and the remainder, the *Second Division*.

### *First Division.*

185. The first division consists of two classes of verbs, (1) those whose passive participles preserve the vowel of the present ; (2) those whose passive participles have vowel change.

#### 186. DIVISION I.—CLASS I.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	O.E. PAST	PASS. PART
a, o, ea	e	a, o	ea, â, o	eo, e	ea, a
fall	fell	fallen	fealle	feoll	feallen
hang	hung	hung	hange	hêng	hangon
hold	held	held, holden	healde	heold	healden
blow	blew	blown	blâwe	bleow	blâwen
know	knew	known	cnâwe	cneow	cnâwen
grow	grew	grown	grôwe	greow	grôwen
throw	threw	thrown	thrâwe	threow	thrâwen
crow	crew	crown	crâwe	creow	crâwen
	[crowed <sup>1</sup> ]	[crowed]			
beat	beat	beaten	beâte	beot	beâten
gang	[went]	gone	gange	geong	gangen
mow	[mowed]	[mowed]	mâwe	meow	mâwen
		mown			
sow	[sowed]	sown	sâwe	seow	sâwen
hew	[hewed]	[hewed]	heâwe	heow	heâwen
		hewn			

(1) The following verbs once belonged to this class : flow, fold, low, leap, let, row, span, sleep, sweep, walk, well weep.

(2) As early as the fourteenth century we find weak past tenses of the verbs *know*, *blow*, *grow*, *leap*, *walk*.

(3) Fold. In the English Bible (*Nahum* x. 10) we find p. p. folden. Cotgrave has unfolden.

<sup>1</sup> The words in brackets are the ordinary forms now in use.



(4) *Held*, is an instance of a passive participle being replaced by a past tense. This arose through the dropping of *en* in *holden*, which left *hold* as the passive participle, in no wise differing in form from the present tense. Cp. *stood* for *stand* = *standen*.

(5) *Hew* retained its strong past tense as late as the sixteenth century.

“And (he) *hew* it al to smal peces.”—*St. Juliana*, p. 85.

“And the yere folowyng Kyng Wylliam *hewe* downe moche of the wood.”—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 250.

*Hewn* and *mown* are mostly used as adjectives, as, “*hewn* stones,” “*mown* grass.”

(6) *Hang*. The old preterite was *heng* (See Chaucer, *Prol.* l. 160). The past *hung* seems to have arisen from the M.E. form of the past participle *hongen* (pronounced like the *o* in *some*).

“Me þouȝte I saw a wyn-tre  
On þis tre, on vche a bowȝe  
*Henge* grapes picke ynowȝe :  
Of þo grapes þat þere *hong*  
In a coupe me þouȝte I wrong.”

*Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 4413.

Hardyng (*Chronicle*, p. 310) uses *hong* for *hung* (p. p.) :—

“On Sainct Andrewes day thei wer drawe and *hong*.”

“With ropes were thou bounde and on the gallowe *honge*.”

FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 430.

(7) *Sew* = *sewed*.

“An husband that *seu* god sed apon his land.”—*Met. Hom.* p. 145.

(8) *Welk* = *walked*.

“A man *welk* thoru a wod his wai.”—*Cursor Mundi*, *Edinburgh MS.*

“And than we *welk* forth.”—*Paston Letters*, ed. Gairdner, vol. i. p. 111.

(9) *Leap* (*lep*) = *leaped*.

‘For which his hors for feere gan to turne,  
And *leep* asyde, and foundred as he *leep*.”

CHAUCER, *Knights Tale*, l. 1828.



(10) Flowed. The O.E. *fleow* became in E.E. *fleaw*, *fleau*; in M.E. *flew* is used as the past of *fly* or *flee*.

"The flood that *oovrflew* al the world."—CAFGRAVE, p. 17.

(11) Slep = *sleeped*.

"Thre daies *slep* he al on-on."—O.E. *Misc.* p. 24.

(12) Wep = *weeped*.

"Swiche teares *wep* ure drihten."—O.E. *Hom. II.* p. 145.

### 187. DIVISION I.—CLASS II.

PRES. i	PAST a, u, ou	PASS. PART. u, ou	PRES. i	O.E. PAST a	PASS. PART. u
begin	began	begun	on-ginne <sup>1</sup>	on-gana	on-gunnen
cling	clang [clung]	clung	clinge	clang	clungen
climb	clomb [climbed]	[climbed]	climbe	clamb	clumben
drink	drank	drunk	drince	dranc	druncen
run	ran	run	rinne, yrne	ran, arn	runnen
swim	swam	swum	swimme	swamm	swummen
spin	span [spun]	spun	spinne	spann	spunnen
sing	sang	sung	singe	sang	sungen
shrink	shrank	shrunk	since	sanc	suncen
sink	sank	sunk	scrince	scranc	scruncen
fling	flang[flung]	flung	—	—	—
sling	slang[slung]	slung	—	—	—
ring	rang	rung	hringe	hrang	hrungen
slink	slunk	slung	—	—	—
spring	sprang	sprung	springe	sprang	sprungen
sting	stang[stung]	stung	stinge	stang	stungen
swing	swang [swung]	swung	swinge	swang	swungen
wring	wrang [wring]	wrung	wringe	wrang	wrunge
win	wan [won]	won	—	—	—
bind	bound	bounden [bound]	binde	band	bunden
find	found	found	finde	fand	funden
fight	fought	fought	—	—	—
grind	ground	ground	grinde	grand	grunden
wind	wound	wound	—	—	—
e	o	o	e	ea	o
help	holp [helped]	holpen [helped]	helpe	healp	holpen
melt	molt [melted]	molten [melted]	melte	mealt	molten
swell	[swelled]	swollen [swelled]	swelle	sweal	swollen
burst	burst	burst	berste	bearst	borsten

<sup>1</sup> All these verbs had a plural form in *u*:—*we clungon*, &c. = *we clung*.

(1) To this class once belonged *bellow*, *burn*, *ding*, *delve*, *carve*, *milk*, *mourn*, *starve*, *swallow*, *stint*, *spurn*, *thrash*, *wink*, *yield*.

(2) *Bounden*, *drunken*, *molten*, *shrunk*, *sunken*, are still occasionally used as *adjectives*.

(3) The forms in *u* (*spun*, *clung*) have arisen from the passive participle.

(4) The *ou* in *bound*, &c. stands for an older *o* or *a*. This *ou* is probably due to the *u* in the past participle which in M.E. became *ou*; thus the O.E. *funden* = M.E. *founden*. Cp. O.E. *cu*, *hu* = M.E. *cou*, *hou* = Eng. *cow*, *how*.

(5) *Clomb* = *climbed*.

“So *clomb* this first grand thief into God’s fold.”

MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, iv. 192.

“We forded the river, and *clomb* the high hill.”

BYRON, *Siege of Corinth*, l. 6.

(6) *Swal* = *swelled*.

“And [he] *swalle* and become grete.”

LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 37.

“Hir thought it *swal* so sore about hir hert.”

CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 6549.

(7) *Dalf* = *delved*.

“When Adam *dalve* and Eve span,

Who was then the gentleman?”

PILKINGTON, p. 125; see *Piers Plowman*, B. vi. 193.

“Whenne thei be *dolven* in her den.”

*Babes Book*, p. 52.

(8) *Halp* = *helped*.

“This good lady she *halpe*.”

LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 136.

“Those that be in hell cannot be *holpen* by it [prayer].”—

GRINDAL, *Rem.* p. 34.

(9) Yald = *yielded*.

"He *yalde* ayen the sight unto this good man."—LA TOUR  
LANDRY, p. 102.

"He *yald* hym creaunt to Crist."

*Piers Plowman*, ed. Wright, l. 7810, B. xii. 193.

Surrey has the old past participle *yolden*; Fabyan has *yolded*.

(10) Foughten = *fought* (p.p.).

"This yere was the felde of Dykysmew *foughten*."—FABYAN,  
p. 683.

"On the *foughten* field."

MILTON, *Paradise Lost*, vi. 410.

(11) Malt = *metted*.

"And the metalle be the hete of the fire *malt*."

CAPGRAVE, p. 9.

(12) Dang = *dinged*.

"That thai suld tak kobille stanes,  
And *ding* his teth out all at anes;  
And when thai with the stanes him *dang*,  
He stode ay laghand tham omang."

*MS. Harl.* 4196, fol. 170.

(13) Carf = *carved*.

"And *carf* byforn his fader at the table."

CHAUCER, *Prol.* l. 100.

"Tho was he *corven* out of his harneys."

*The Knightes Tale*, l. 1838.

(14) Starf = *starved*, *died*.

"— Kyng Capaneus

That *starf* at Thebes."

*Ib.* l. 935.

(15) Wonk = *winked*.

"He *wonk*, and gan about hyme to behold."

*Lancel. of the Laik*, l. 1058.

(16) Burst (past) has come in through the old p. p. *borsten*  
or *bursten*. The true past is *brast* or *barst*.

"And ute as a brok it *brast* þe strand."

*Cursor Mundi*, l. 6392.

188. *Second Division.*

## DIVISION II.—CLASS I.

			O.E.		
PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
ea	o (a)	o	e	æ	o
(1) bear	bore, bare*	born	bere	bær	boren
break	broke, brake*	broken			
shear	[sheared]	shorn [sheared]	scere	scær	scoren
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken	sprece	spræc	sprecen
steal	stole	stolen	stele	stæl	stolen
tear	tore, tare*	torn	tere	tær	toren
(2) come	came	come	cume	com	cumen

(1) The old verbs *nim* (take), *quell* once belonged to this class.

(2) The O.E. *æ* became in M.E. *a* (cp. the archaic forms *bare*, *spake*, *brake*), and *o*.

(3) The *n* of the p.p. in M.E. was often dropped in all dialects except the Northern. We find in Shakespeare many instances of these curtailed forms, as, *broke*, *spoke*, *stole*, for *broken*, *spoken*, *stolen*.

(4) *Shear*. The old past tense was *share* or *shore*.

"First he *shar* a-two here throtes."—HAVELOK, l. 1413.

## 189. DIVISION II.—CLASS II.

			O.E.		
PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
i	a	i	i, e	æ, (ea)	e
(1) bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid	bidde	bæd	beden
give	gave	given	gife	geaf	gifen
lie	lay	lien,* lain	licge	læg	legen
sit	sat	sat	sitte	sæt	seten
ea, (ee); e	a, (o)	ea, (ee,) o			
(2) eat	ate	eaten	ete	æt	eten
get	gat, got	gotten,* got	-gite	-geat	-geten
tread	trod	trodden, trod	trede	træd	treden
see	saw	seen	seo, seohē	seah	ge-sēn
weave	wove	woven	wefe	wæf	wefen
—	quoth	—	cwethe	cwæth	cweden
—	was	—	[wese]	wæs	wesen

Words marked thus \* are archaic.

(1) Quoth is now used as a present tense. The root of the present is seen in *bequeathe*, the old preterite of which was *biquath* :—

“ [He] *biquath* his serke to his love.”

*Gest. Rom.* 23.

(2) Fret, knead, wreak, and mete (measure), once belonged to this conjugation.

(3) The old form *lien* occurs in *Gen.* xxvi. 10, *Ps.* lxviii. In Tyndall it is spelt *lyne*, *lyen*.

(4) The past tenses of wreak in M.E. were *wreck* and *wrak*; p.p. *ywroken*. Spenser uses the p.p. *wroken*. Surrey has *unwroken* = *unrevenged*.

(5) The o in *trod*, *got*, *quoth*, arises out of M.E. a = O.E. = æ.

(6) Scott (*Waverley*, xi.) has *eat* = *ate*. Shakespeare (*King John* I. I.), has *eat* = *eaten*; O.E. æ becomes M.E. e(ee), as well as a; hence M.E. *eet* = *eat* = *ate*.

“ Butter and bred *thai ete* al-sua.”

*C. Mundi*, G., l. 2715.

“ Butter and breed *thai eet* also.”—*Ib.* T.

## 190. DIVISION II.—CLASS III.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
a	o, oo, e	a (o)	a	o	a
awake	awoke	awoke	wace	wôc	wacen
forsake	forsook	forsaken	hlade	hlôd	hladen
lade	[laden]	laden[laden]	grafe	grôf	grafen
grave,	[graved]	[graved]			
engrave		graven	stande	stôd	standen
stand	stood	stood	scaf	scôf	scafen
shave	[shaved]	shaven			
		[shaved]	scace	scôc	scacen
shake	shook	shaken	swerige	swôr	sworen
swear	swore	sworn	tace	tôc	tacen
take	took	taken	drage	drôh	dragen
draw	drew	drawn	sleahhe	slôh	sleahhen
slay	slew	slain			

(1) To this class of verbs once belonged *ache*, *bake*, *fare*, *gnaw*, *heave*, *laugh*, *shape*, *step*, *wade*, *wash*, *wax*, *yell*.

(2) The past tense is often used for the past participle, as *mistook* = *mistaken* (*Ful. Caesar*, I. 2; Milton's *Arcades*),

shook = shaken (*Paradise Lost*, VI., 219); stood has taken the place of the p.p. *standen*, or *stonden*.

(3) Sware for swore occurs in *Mark*, VI., 23. The *a* is not original, but probably arose through the M.E. *swar* = *swer*, which caused it to be classed with *spake*, *bare*, &c. Cp. l. 1618 in *Cursor Mundi*, where "he *suar* his ath" in Cotton MS. (Northern dialect) = "he *swor* an ooth" in Trin. MS. (Midland dialect).

(4) Bake. The old p.p. *baken* occurs in *Levit.* ii. 4.

"myn hungir *book* thi blisful breed."

POL. *Rel. Love Poems*, p. 191.

"—benes and bren *ybaken* togideres."

*Piers Plowman*, vi. B. 184, p. 102.

(5) Gnaw was once conjugated like draw, slay. In M.E. we find *gnow* and *gnew*; *gnew* was used late in the sixteenth century. The p.p. *be-gnawn* occurs in the *Taming of the Shrew*, iii. 2.

"pat best *gnow* up al hidene."—*Cursor Mundi*, G. l. 6043.

"So depe hi [rasours] *wode* and *gnowe*."—*St. Juliana*, p. 85.

(6) Heave. For heaved we sometimes find *hove* and *heft*.

The O.E. pret. was *hōf*. E.E. *hæf*, *heof*, *hef*, M.E. *hef*, *hove*.

"She *hef* hir heued heyer."—CHAUCER, *Boethius*, l. 5141.

"Ure lafdi.....this dai was *hoven* into heuene."—O.E. *Hom.* II. p. 167.

(7) Shape. The old past tense *shope*, was in use in the sixteenth century.

"I *shoop* me into shroudes."

*Piers Plowman*, B. Prol. 2.

"But at the last god *shope* a remedy."

HICKSCORNER, p. 163, ed. 1874.

The p.p. occurs in *mis-shapen*, *ill-shapen*. See *Ps.* li. 5.

(8) Grave. We have the old p.p. as an adjective in "a *graven* image."



The verb *to grave* once signified *to bury*.

"In Ebron hir *grof* Abraham,  
Thar first was *graven* hali Adam."

*C. Mundi*, G. l. 3213.

(9) Lade. We find as passive participle *loden*, *loaden*, as well as *laden*.

(10) Wash. The old p.p. was retained very late in *unwashen*.

"Hir body *wesch* with water."

CHAUCER, *Knights Tale*, l. 1425.

(11) Wax to grow. Spenser has *wox* past, and *woxen* p.p., *waxen* = *grown*, occurs in *Gen.* xix. 13, *Lev.* xxv. 39.

"þai stod þan still and *wex* no more."

*Cursor Mundi*, l. 1420

# 191. DIVISION II.—CLASS IV.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
i (long)	o	i (short)	î	â	i
a-bide	abode	abode, abiden*	bide	bâd	bidē
bite	bit	bitten	bite	bât	biten
drive	drove	driven	drife	drâf	drifen
chide	chode,*	chidden,	clde	câd	ciden
	chid	chid			
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid	ride	râd	riden
rise	rose	risen	rise	râs	risen
rive	rove [rived]	riven [rived]			
shine	shone	shone	scine	scân	scinen
shrive	shrove	shriven	scrife	scrâf	gescrifen
slide	slid	slidden, slid	slide	slâd	sliden
smite	smote, smit*	smitten	smite	smât	smiten
stride	strode	stridden	strithe	strâth	strithen
thrive	throve,	thriven,	—	—	—
	thrived	throve*			
write	wrote, writ*	written,	write	wrât	writen
		writ*			
strike	struck	struck,	strice	strâc	stricen
		stricken			
strive	strove	striven	—	—	—

\* Obsolete.

(1) To this class once belonged gripe, flite (strive), glide, reap, slit, spew, sigh, wreathe.

(2) The *o* in this class of verbs stands for an older *a*, which occurs in the archaic forms *drave* (*Josh.* xvi. 10, Spenser, *F. Q.* vi. vii. 12); *strake* (*Acts*, xxvii. 17); *strave* (Surrey).

(3) Bit (cp. the old past tenses *rid*, *slid*, *writ*, *smit*), is borrowed from the pass. participle. The true form is *bot*, or *boot*.

"The serpent *boot* the grehounde grevously."

*Gest. Rom.* 87.

(4) Shone, abode, struck (p.p.) show how the past tense has replaced the older passive participle.

"Till the sunne haveth *sinen*."

= Till the sun hath shone.

*O.E. Miscell.* p. 1.

"Yf he had *abyden* at home."

LA TOUR LANDRY, p. 170.

"Well *stricken* in years."

*Luke* i. 7; see *Ps.* liii. 4.

Shakespeare has,

"*Struck* in years."—*Rich.* III. i. 1.

(5) Wreathen sometimes occurs as the p.p. of wreathe, or writhe.

"*Wreathen* hair."

LATIMER; see *Exodus*, xxviii. 14, 22, 24, 25.

The M.E. past of *wrethe* was *wrooth* or *wroth*. In the sixteenth century we find *writhe* used as a past tense.

"He *writhe* her necke in sonder."

STUBS, *The Anatomie of Abuses*, p. 67, ed. 1585.

(6) "He *grop* [griped] an axe, that was ful god."

HAVELOK, l. 1776.

(7) "I thair chaulis *raf* [rived] in tua."

*Cursor Mundi*, G. p. 433.

(8) "He *slod* [slid] *slizle* a-down."

*Will. of Palerne*, l. 792.

(9) "The vapour, which that of the erthe *glod* [glided]."

CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 10707.

(10) "And Jacob *chode* with Laban."

*Gen.* xxxi. 36.

## DIVISION II.—CLASS V.

PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.	PRES.	PAST	PASS. PART.
ee, oo	o	o	eo	ea	o
freeze	froze	frozen	freose	freās	froren
seethe	sod* [seethed]	sodden, sod* [seethed]	seothe	seāth	soden
cleave	clove [cleft]	cloven [cleft]	cleofe	cleāf	clofen
choose	chose	chosen	ceose	ceās	coren
lose	[lost]	[lost] lorn,* forlorn	leose	leās	loren
shoot	shot	shot, shotten*	sceote	sceāt	scoten
fly	flew	flown	fleoge, fleohe	fleāh	flogen

(1) Many weak verbs once belonged to this class, as, brook, bow, brew, chew, creep, crowd, dive, flee, fleet (float), lie lose, lock, greet, knot, reek, rue, shove, smoke, snow, suck, slip, tug.

(2) Clave occurs in the Bible for clove (*Gen.* xx. 3).

Cloven has now only an adjectival force, as in "*cloven foot*."

"It [sea] *clef* [*clawe* C.] and gaf him redi gate."

*Cursor Mundi*, G. l. 6262.

Cleave, "to cling to," is a weak verb, yet clave is found in *Ruth*, i. 14, as its past tense.

(3) Lorn = *losen*, and forlorn = *forlosen*, are archaic forms. In the O.E. p.p. the s has passed into an r (cp. *was* and *were*, &c).

"—After he had fair Una lorn."

SPENSER, *F. Q.* i. 42.

"Thritti yeir es sibēn gan

pat i mi sun hād *losen* dere."—*Cursor Mundi*, C. l. 5363.

(4) Froren = *frozen*.

"My heart blood is well nigh *froren* (frozen) I feel."

*Ib. Shep. Cal.*, Feb.

"—The parching air

Burns *frore* (= frozen) and cold performs th' effect of fire."

MILTON, *Par. Lost*.

"A *froren* mur [wall]."—*O.E. Miscell.* p. 151.

(5) Chosen has replaced the old p.p. coren.

"For hir childe thenne sho him *chees*."

*Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 5643.

"He is to-fore alle othre *i-coren*."

*O.E. Misc.* p. 98.

(6) *Seethe*. In the Bible (*Gen.* xxv. 29), *sod* = *boiled* occurs as the past tense.

"Wortes or other herbes . . . .

The whiche sche schredde and *seeth* for hir lyvinge."

CHAUCER, *The Clerkes Tale*, l. 227.

"Some (fisch) thei solde and some thei *sothe*."

*Piers Plowman*, B. xv. 288.

"*Ysothe* or ybake."—*Ib.* p. 278.

"I force not whether it be *sodden* or roast."

*The Four Elements*, p. 35, ed. 1874.

"Of all manner of dishes both *sod* and roast."—*Ib.* p. 25.

(7) "Hit *snew* [snowed] to hem as hit were floure."

*Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 6381.

192. Some verbs that have now strong past tense or passive participle, were once weak.<sup>1</sup>

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
betide	betid*	[betid]
dig	dug	dug
	digged*	digged*
hide	hid	hidden, [hid]
rot	[rotted]	rotten
show	[showed]	shown
	[shewed]	[shewed, showed]
stick	stuck	stuck
	stack*	—
strew	[strewed]	strown
spit	spit,* spat	spat, spitten*
saw	[sawed]	sawn
wear	wore	worn
	ware*	

The past tenses *betid*, *hid*, *spit*, *spat*, are only apparently strong. The M.E. forms *betid-de*, *hid-de*, *spit-te*, *spat-te*, (cp. *swat-te*, *sweated*) were weak.

<sup>1</sup> Forms marked thus \* are *archaic*. Forms in brackets are weak.

## 193. ALPHABETICAL LIST OF STRONG VERBS.\*

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
abide	abode	abode
arise	arose	arisen
awake	awoke	awoke
	<i>awaked*</i>	<i>awaked</i>
bake	—	baken
	<i>baked</i>	<i>baked</i>
bear (bring forth)	bore, bare*	born
bear (carry)	bore, bare*	borne
beat	beat	beaten
begin	began	begun
behold	beheld	beholden, beheld
bid	bade, bid	bidden, bid
bind	bound	bounden,* bound
bite	bit	bitten, bit
blow	blew	blown
break	broke, brake*	broken
burst	burst	burst, bursten*
chide	chode,* chid	chidden, chid
choose	chose, chase*	chosen
cleave (split)	clove	cloven
	<i>clave*</i>	—
	<i>cleft</i>	<i>cleft</i>
cling	clung	clung
climb	clomb	—
	<i>climbed</i>	<i>climbed</i>
cling	clang	clung
come	came	come
crow	crew	crown
	<i>crowed</i>	<i>crowed</i>
do	did	done
draw	drew	drawn
drink	drank	drunk, drunken
drive	drove, drave*	driven
eat	ate	eaten
fall	fell	fallen

\* The forms in italics are *weak*. Those marked \* thus are *archaic*.

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
fight	fought	foughten*, fought
find	found	found
fling	flung, flang*	flung
fly	flew	flown
forbear	forbore	forborne
forget	forgot forgot*	forgotten forgot*
forsake	forsook	forsaken
freeze	froze	frozen frown, froze*
get	got, gat*	got, gotten
give	gave	given
go	went	gone
grave	graved	graven
en-grave	<i>engraved</i>	en-graven* <i>engraved</i>
grind	ground	ground
grow	grew	grown
hang	hung <i>hanged</i>	hung <i>hanged</i>
heave	hove <i>heaved</i>	— <i>heaved</i>
help	— <i>helped</i>	holpen <i>helped</i>
hew	— <i>hewed</i>	hewn <i>hewed</i>
hold	held	held, holden
know	knew	known
lade	— <i>laded</i>	laden, loaden <i>laded</i>
lie	lay	lain, lien*
lose	— <i>lost</i>	lorn, forlorn <i>lost</i>
melt	— <i>melted</i>	molten <i>melted</i>
mow	— <i>mowed</i>	mown <i>mowed</i>
ride	rode, rid*	ridden, rid*
ring	rang, rung*	rung



Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
rise	rose	risen
rive	—	riven
	<i>rived</i>	<i>rived</i>
run	ran	run
see	saw	seen
seethe	sod	sodden, sod*
	<i>seethed</i>	<i>seethed</i>
shake	shook	shaken
shave	<i>shaved</i>	shaven, <i>shaved</i>
shear	<i>sheared</i> , shore*	shorn, <i>sheared</i>
shine	shone	shone
	<i>shined</i>	shined*
shoot	shot	shot, shotten*
shrink	shrank	shrunk
	shrunk*	shrunk
sing	sang, sung*	sung
sink	sank	sunk, sunken
sit	sat	sat, sitten*
slay	slew	slain
slide	slid	slid, slidden
sling	slung, slang*	slung
slink	slunk	slunk
smite	smote, smit*	smitten, smit*
sow	—	sown
	<i>sowed</i>	<i>sowed</i>
speak	spoke, spake*	spoken
spin	spun, span*	spun
spring	sprung, sprang*	sprung
stand	stood	stood
steal	stole, stale*	stolen
sting	stung, stang*	stung
stink	stank	stunk
stride	strode, strid*	stridden
strike	struck	struck
		stricken
strive	strove	striven
swear	swore	sworn
	sware*	
swell	<i>swelled</i>	swollen, <i>swelled</i>

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
swim	swam, swum*	swam
swing	swung	swung
take	took	taken
tear	tore, tare*	torn
thrive	throve <i>thrived</i>	thriven <i>thrived</i>
throw	threw	thrown
tread	trod	trodden, trod
wake	woke <i>waked</i>	— <i>waked</i>
weave	wove	woven
win	won, wan*	won
wind	wound	wound
wring	wrung, wrang*	wrung
write	wrote, writ*	written

### Weak Verbs.

194. The strong conjugation comprehends all primitive verbs ; to the weak belong all derivative and borrowed verbs.

The weak conjugation is sometimes called the regular conjugation, because the formation of the past tense of weak verbs by means of the suffix *d*, is the ordinary method now in use. The method of forming the past tense by reduplication and by vowel change, is quite obsolete. Children and uneducated persons often make the strong verbs conform to the weak conjugation, and say *seed* for *saw*, &c. We have done exactly the same with regard to many old verbs, as, *shoved* for *shof*, *brewed* for *brew*, &c.

195. Weak Verbs form their past tense by means of the suffix *-d* or *-t*.

In old English we find that this ending had a longer form *-de*, as, *Ic ner-e-de* *I saved*. This *-de* represents a more primitive *dede* = *did*, which is the past tense, (formed by reduplication) of the verb *do*.

*I loved* = *I love-did* ; *thou lovedest* = *thou love-didst*, &c.

196. The suffix **-d** is united to the root by the connecting vowel **-e**, as, **lov-e-d**, **command-e-d**.

(1) The connecting vowel, though preserved in writing, is dropped in pronunciation, except when the verbal root ends in a dental. Thus we **loved**, **praised**, **thanked**, are pronounced **lovd**, **praizd**, **thankt**; but in **commanded**, and **lifted**, the **-ed** has, necessarily, its full pronunciation.

The verbs of this class in O.E. had the radical vowel *short*.

For the reason of the change of **d** to **t**, see § p. 63, 45.

197. The passive participles also end in **d** or **t**. This suffix has not the same origin as the **d** of the past tense.

198. The following verbs have no connecting vowel, and are sometimes called *contracted* verbs:—

(2) *a*. Before the addition of the suffix **-d**, the radical vowel is shortened.

Pres.	Past	Pass. Part.
hear	heard	heard
shoe	shod	shod
flee	fled	fled

*b*. If the root ends in **d**, the suffix **-d** is dropped, and the radical vowel is shortened.

feed	fed	fed
lead	led	led
read	red	red

In the O.E. the past tenses of *a* and *b* were the same : cp. O.E.

	Inf.	Past	Pass Part.
<i>a</i> .	hȳr-an (hear)	hȳr-de	hȳr-ed
	fêd -an (feed)	fêd-de	fêd-ed
<i>b</i> .	lêd-an (lead)	lêd-de	lêd-ed

*Flee* was originally strong, see p. 140 ; *meet*, *met*, *met* has conformed to *lead*, &c. Cp. O.E. *mêtan*, *mêt-te*, *mêt-ed*.

In E. E. we find the shortened p.p. *fed*, *led*, &c. The loss of the final *e* of the past tense, in the fifteenth century, reduced the past tense and the p.p. to the same form : thus, *ledde* became *ledd*, or *led*.

In some few verbs ending in a liquid, or combination of liquids, *t* has replaced the older *d*.

	Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
	feel	felt	felt
	deal	dealt	dealt
	smell	smelt	smelt
	mean	meant	meant
	dream	dreamt	dreamt
	burn	burnt	burnt
Cp. O.E.	dæġ-an	dæġ-de	gedæġ-ed
	bærn-an	bærn-de	bærn-ed

(3) The suffix *-d* (*-t*) is often dropped after *d*, *t*, *st*, *rt*, *ft*, and the present, past, and passive participle, are identical in form.

rid	rid	rid
shred	shred	shred
set	set	set
shut	shut	shut
cut	cut	cut
put	put	put
hurt	hurt	hurt
lift	lift <sup>1</sup>	lift
thrust	thrust	thrust
cast	cast	cast

In O.E. *riu* and *set* were

Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
â-hreddan	âhred-de	â-hredd-ed
sett-an	set-te	sett-ed, set

*Shut*, *put*, *shred*, *spread*, were perhaps similarly conjugated. *Cut*, *put*, *hurt*, *lift*, &c. are not found in O.E.

In Middle English the past tense had a form distinct from

<sup>1</sup> In the English Bible.

the pass. participle, as, *ridde*, *shredde*, *sette*, *cutte*, &c. We have now longer forms for some of the M.E. shorter ones ; cp. *reste* = *rested* ; *wette* = *wetted*, &c. O.E. *scyl-de* = *shielded* ; *stylte* = *stilted*.

(4) The suffix *-t* replaces *d* after *p*, *f*, *s*, *ch*, *v*. The radical vowel, if long, is shortened.

Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
creep	crept	crept
weep	wept	wept
kiss	kist	kist
lose	lost	lost
pitch	pight	pight*
leave	left	left
cleave	cleft	cleft

The *v* in *leave*, *cleave*, *bereave*, was originally *f*. In M.E. *crept*, *wept* in the past tense were *crepte*, *wepte* : and also *crep*, *wep*, (strong forms).

(5) Verbs ending in *ld*, *nd*, *rd*, changed the *d* of the root into *t*, and the tense suffix is dropped.

build	built	built
gild	gilded, gilt	gilt
bend	bent	bent
send	sent	sent
gird	girt	girt

The *t* in the past tense of *built*, &c., stands for an original *d + de*, which became *de*, then *te*, and, lastly, *t*. This last change took place during the fourteenth century.

In Elizabethan writers we meet with the longer forms, *builded*, &c., and we have also two participial forms, the contracted, and the uncontracted, with slightly different meanings, as, *gilt* and *gilded*, *bent* and *bended*, *blent* and *blended*.

In O.E. we find only the long forms of the p.p., as, *gyrd-ed*, *send-ed*, &c.

(6) Some few verbs have vowel-change with the addition of *d* or *t* in the past tense.



(a)	tell	told	told
	sell	sold	sold
(b)	seek	sought	sought
	teach	taught	taught

The change of vowel in these verbs is not the same as that in the strong verbs. It is the present that has changed. The root of tell is *tal*, which we preserve in *tale*, and *tal-k*. Cp. *sell* and *sale*. Between the root and the infinitive suffix there was once an *i*, which turned the *a* to *e*; thus, root *tal*, whence *tali-en*, modified to *tehi-en* or *tell-en*. Cp. *man*, *men*. The *o* in *told*, *sold*, represents the older *a* of *tale*, *talk*, which was never modified by the lost suffix *-i*.

The *t* in *sought*, &c., is due to the sharp *k* or *c* in *seek*. Under the influence of *t*, the guttural has become *h*, or *gh*.

In the seventeenth century we find *rought*, *raught*, *straught*, the past tenses of *reck*, *reach*, *stretch*.

In M.E. we had *roughte* = *recked*; *raughte* = *reached*; *straughte* = *stretched*; *laughte* = *latched*, *seized*.

The verbs of this class were in O.E. contracted in past tense and pass. part.

199. The following weak verbs have some peculiarities that need explanation.

**Catch, caught, caught.** This verb of Norman-French origin has followed the past tense &c. of E.E. *lacchen*, to catch, take; *lahte* (past).

Analagous to *caught* we find *fraught*, as well as *freighted*; and *distraught* for *distracted*; also *raught* = *reached* in Shakespeare, *Love's Labour Lost*, IV. 2, 41; *raught* also = *reft*. Cp. 2 *Hen. VI.* II. 3, 43.

"I *raught* his head from his body."

*Pierce Penilesse*, p. 82.

**Clothe, clad, clad.** In O.E. we find *clâthian*, (inf.) *clâthode* (past), *clâthod* (p.p.), = M.E. *clothe* (*clethe*), *clothed* (*clethede*, *clodde*), *clad*, *clad*.

In M.E. we find *ledde*, *ladde*, = *led*, which has probably led to *clad* through *clad* = *clodde* = *clethde*.



**Make, made, made.** Made lost its radical *k* as early as the thirteenth century. In the fourteenth we find in the Northern dialects *ma* (inf) and *mas* = *makes*. Cp. M.E. *ta* = *to take*, *tas* = *takes*, *tan* = *taken*.

**Have, had, had;** O.E. *habban*, *hæfde*, *hæfed*; E.E. *have*, *hefde* (*hedde*, *hadde*), *ihafd* (*ihad*).

There was also a short form *ha*, *to have*, from which comes *has* = *haves*. In the M.E. Northern dialect we find *has*. See Bruce, xiii. 642, (ed. Skeat).

**Say, said, said;** O.E. *secgan*, *sægde*, *sægd*.

**Lay, laid, laid;** O.E. *lecgan*, *lecgde*, *lecgd*.

In say, lay (M.E. *seye*, *leye*), the *y* represents the older *cg* (*g*).

**Buy, bought, bought;** O.E. *bycgan*, *bohte*, *boht*. In M.E. *buggen*, *bugge* = *to buy*: and here the *y* represents an older *g* which makes its appearance in the past tense. Cp. *slay* and *slaughter*.

**Think, thought, thought;** O.E. *thencan*, *thôhte*, *thôht*.

The *n* is not radical; cp. *gange* and *go*; *stand* and *stood*.

**(Me)thinks, (me)thought, (me)thought;** O.E. *thyncþ*, *thuhte*, *thûht*.

**Work, wrought, wrought;** O.E. *wyrcan*, *worhte*, *worht*.

**Wrought**, as a past tense, is almost superseded by the more modern form, **worked**.

**Went** was originally the past tense of **wend**. O.E. *wendan*, *to turn, go*. It replaced the O.E. *eo-de*, M.E. *zede*, *zode*, *yode* (past tense of the root *i* *to go*).

**Go** (old form *gang*) was originally a strong verb: as is seen by its p.p. **gone**.

**Ago** = **agone** is the p.p. of the O.E. verb *agan*,

*to go by, elapse.* It is now used adverbially, as “a long time *ago*.”

“By Saint Mary, and I wist that, I would be *ago*.”

HICKSCORNER, p. 167, ed. 1874.

“Who, think you, brought here this figure?

Certes, Lord Nature,

Himself not long *agone*.”

*The Four Elements*, p. 28, ed. 1874.

**Do, did, done**, is a reduplicated verb, and of course belongs to the strong conjugation of verbs.

The Sanskrit *dhâ* to place is cognate with English *do*, and its perfect *dadhau* is formed by reduplication, like English *did*.

## Verbal Inflexions.

### PERSONAL ENDINGS.

200. Verbs are of two kinds, primary and derivative. All the strong verbs are of primary origin; the weak verbs are of secondary formation. To **bear** is a primary verb, because it is formed directly from the root, **bar**; but **tell**, as we have seen (p. 157), is formed from the nominal theme, **tale**, and is therefore a derivative verb.

The root is the significant element in the verb, to which are added endings to mark **person**, **tense**, or **mood**.

Sometimes the personal terminations are added directly to the verbal root, as in **do-st**, **do-th**, or by means of a connecting vowel, as in **lov-e-st**, **lov-e-th**.

The person-endings were originally pronominal roots placed *after*, and compounded with, the verbal

root or theme, as if we were to say love-I, love-thou, love-he, &c.

201. The suffix of the first person singular, was originally *m* (for *mi*), which we still retain in the verb, *a-m*.

Cp. Lat. *su-m*, Gr. *εἶ-μι*, Sansk. *as-mi* = *I am*, Ger. *bin*, O.H.G. *pim*, O.E. (Northern) *beom*, *I be*.

202. The suffix of the second person singular is *-st*; it was originally *-t*, which can be traced back to a suffix *-ti*, identical in origin with the root of *thou*. In the subjunctive mood this suffix is altogether lost.

The original *t* occurs in *shal-t*, *wil-t*, *ar-t*.

Strong verbs in O.E. lost this *t* of *ti*, and the second person singular ends only in *e*; as, *heold-e* = *held-e-st*, *didst hold*.

This *-st* belonged only to *weak* verbs in the earliest period, but it was gradually extended to *strong* verbs in the fourteenth century.

203. The suffix of the third person is *-th* (the root of *the*, *tha-t*) = *he*, *that*. As early as the eleventh century, in the Northern dialects, *th* was softened to *s*; but the former is now archaic.

In the past tense of strong and weak verbs, the endings in the first and third persons singular have altogether disappeared.

204. In modern English we have no plural suffixes.

In O.E. the indicative present plural of all persons ended in *-th* (originally the ending of the second person plural), as (1) *ber-a-th*; (2) *ber-a-th*; (3) *ber-a-th*.

The past indicative and the subjunctive (present and past) ended all their persons in *-n* (the original suffix of the third person plural); as, subjunctive present *find-e-n*; indicative past, *fund-o-n*, and subjunctive past, *fund-e-n*, or *fund-o-n*.

In the thirteenth and fourteenth centuries, we find the Southern dialect keeping **-th** for the present plural indicative, the Midland **-n**, and the Northern dropping all endings, or taking **-s** in the second and third persons. (See § 49, p. 31).

In O.E. the personal endings were often dropped when the pronoun followed the verbs; as *gâ ge = gath ge* (go ye); *ete we = eten we* (eat we, let us eat).

The plural in **-en** was in use up to the middle of the sixteenth century, and a few examples are to be found in Spenser and Shakespeare; Hall, (contemporary with Milton) uses it in his Satires, *e.g.*

“ And angry bullets *whistlen* at his ear.”  
vi. 46.

In O.E. the imperative plural ended in **-th**, as *nim-ath, take ye*. In M.E. this ending was kept up in the Midland and Southern dialects, but not in the Northern dialect, where **-s** was used instead of it.

## 205. Old English Conjugation of Verbs.

### STRONG VERBS.

#### *Active Voice.*

Nim-an, to take.

Pres. Inf.	Past	Pass. Part.
nim-an	nam	num-en

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present (and Future) Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. ic nim-e	we nim-ath
2. thû nim-est	ge nim-ath
3. he nim-eth	hi nim-ath

*Past Tense.*

1. ic nam	we nam-on
2. thû nam-e	ge nam-on
3. he nam	hi nam-on

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

1. ic nim-e	we nim-en
2. thû nim-e	ge nim-en
3. he nim-e	hi nim-en

*Past Tense.*

1. ic nâm-e	we nâm-en <sup>1</sup>
2. thû nâm-e	ge nâm-en
3. he nâm-e	hi nâm-en

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

nim	nim-ath
Simple Inf.	Pres. Part.
nim-an	nim-ende
Dative Inf.	Pass. Part.
nim-ânnē	num-en

## WEAK VERBS.

*Active Voice.*

Infinitive.	Preterite.	Participle.
ner- <i>i</i> -an ( <i>save</i> )	ner- <i>e</i> -de	ner- <i>e</i> -d
luf- <i>i</i> -an ( <i>love</i> )	luf- <i>o</i> -de	luf- <i>o</i> -d
hȳr-an ( <i>hear</i> )	hȳr-de	hȳr- <i>e</i> -d

<sup>1</sup> The oldest form of the past subjunctive plural ending was *-en*, which afterwards became *-on*.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present (and Future) Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. neri-e, lufig-e, hÿr-e	1. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hÿr-ath
2. neri-est, luf-ast, hÿr-est	2. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hÿr-ath
3. ner-eth, luf-ath, hÿr-eth	3. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hÿr-ath

*Past Tense.*

1. ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hÿr-de	1. ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hÿr-d-on
2. ner-e-de-st, luf-o de-st, hÿr-de-st	2. ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hÿr-d-on
3. ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hÿr-de	3. ner-e-d-on, luf-o-d-on, hÿr-d-on

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

1. } neri-e, lufig-e, hÿr-e	1. } neri-en, lufig-en, hÿr-en
2. }	2. }
3. }	3. }

*Imperfect Tense.*

1. } ner-e-de, luf-o-de, hÿr-de	1. } ner-e-d-en,
2. }	2. } luf-o-d-en,
3. }	3. } hÿr-d-en

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Sing.	Plur.
2. ner-e, luf-a, hÿr	2. neri-ath, lufi-ath, hÿr-ath

## Simple Infin.

neri-an, lufi-an, hÿr-an

## Dative Infin.

neri-anne, lufi-anne, hÿr-anne

## Pres. Participle.

neri-ende, lufig-ende, hÿr-ende

## Pass. Participle.

ner-e-d, luf-o-d, hÿr-e-d



## Infinitive Mood.

206. The infinitive is simply an abstract noun. In O.E. the infinitive ending was *-an*, as *drinc-an*, *to drink*.

In the twelfth and following centuries, this *-an* became *-en* (*-in*) or *e*.

In Wicliffe, the suffix is for the most part *-e*; in Chaucer *-en* or *-e*. This *-e* after a time became silent, and the infinitive was only distinguished by the preposition *to* (except after an auxiliary verb), which at first belonged only to the dative or gerundial infinitive.

“As ha schulde *stupin* and *strecche* forth that swire (neck).”

*Juliana*, B. p. 73, A.D. 1210.

“In ful a bitter bath *bathien* ich schal naked.”

O. E. *Miscell.* p. 180, A.D. 1246.

“In a bytter bath ich schal *bathe* naked.”

*Ib.* p. 181, later version.

“To *bakbite*, and to *bosten*: and *bere* fals wnesse.”

*Piers Plowman*, B. ii. 80.

The infinitive in O.E. was inflected for the dative by the suffix *-e*, and was governed by the preposition *to*; as, *tô gehyrann-e*, *to hear*. This is sometimes called the *gerundial* infinitive, in contradistinction to the simple or uninflected infinitive.

It was used chiefly to express purpose; it translated also Lat. supines, gerunds, future participles, and *ut* with the subjunctive; as, “what went ye out *for to see*,” “he is *to blame*,” &c.

Latin supine in *-um*.

“Sôthlice ût eode se sædere his sæd *tô sârwenne*.”

= Verily outwent the sower to sow his seed.

*Matt.* xiii. 4.

Latin periphrastic conjugation in *-rus* and *-dus*.

“We selfe mægon seôthan thâ thing the *tô seôthenne* sind,  
and brædan thâ thing the *tô brædenne* sind.”

= We ourselves may seethe the things that are to be sodden,  
and roast the things that are to be roasted.

ÆLFRIC.

“Hit is sceamu *tô tellanne*, ac hit ne thûhte him nân sceamu *tô dônne*.”

= It is shameful to tell, but it appeared to him no shame  
to do.—*Chronicle*, A.D. 1052.

Latin supine in *-u*.

“Êthe ... *tô findanne*.”

= Easy to find.

*Ps.* lxxvi. 16.

Latin genitive of gerund.

“Mihte *tô forlætenne*.”

= Power of forgiving, or to forgive.

*John* xix. 10.

Sometimes we find the dative infinitive used to mark the future.

“Thone calic þe ic *tô drincenne* hæbbe.”

= The cup that I have to drink.

*Matt.* xx. 22.

“Ic *tô drincenne* hæbbe.”

= Lat. *bibiturus sum*.

The gerundial ending not only took the same form as the simple infinitive, but it was often confounded with the present participle in *-ende*, or *-inde* (later *-inge*) in E. E. and M. E.

“Thenne beginne we to *fleonne* ant turneth to the luste, ant this is al that we doth te *deruen* cristene men ant *eggîn* to then uuele.”—*Juliana*, p. 44.

“The synfulle (fasteth) for to *clensen* him, the rightwise for to *witiende* his rightwisnesse.”—*O. E. Hom.* II. p. 57.

“And ȝaf it to thre hondred vultures to *etynge*.”—*Trevisa*, III. p. 131. Caxton’s version has “*for to ete*.”

“Also he fonde up . . . newe manere titles and strikes to write amonge the lettres that were listere *to wrytinge* and *to spekyng*.”—*Ib.* III. p. 249.

That the participle in *-nde* could be confounded with the inf. in *-en* is seen in the following passage:—

“But thanke God of heuen for that he hath the *ȝeuene*  
And so thou schalt, my douȝtir, a good lijf *lyvande*.”

*Babees Book*, p. 43.

## Participles.

207. The **present** participle is formed by the suffix *-ing*, which has replaced M.E. *-inde*, *-ende*; O.E. *-end*.

The modern form *-ing* made its appearance in the Southern dialects in the latter part of the twelfth century; but the older form in *-ande* was retained in the Northern dialects up to a very late period. (Cp. Ben Jonson’s *Sad Shepherd*, ii. 2). Spenser has the archaic forms *glitterand* and *trenchand* for *glittering* and *trenchant*.

This change of *-inde* to *-ing* has caused great confusion between verbal nouns in *-ing* (O.E. *-ung*) and participles in *-ing* (see p. 133).

“Wommen ȝeueþ lyf and *fedynde* to Kynges.”

*Trevisa*, III. p. 183.

Here *fedynde* = *feeding* = *sustenance*. See O.E. *Hom.* II. p. 177, l. 23.

The **Passive** participle in the oldest period had a prefix *ge*, which, after the Norman Conquest, was

reduced to (i, y, e). Milton has *yclept* = *called*. He wrongly adds it to a present participle in "*star y-pointing*."

The passive participle of all strong verbs ended in **-en**. In the thirteenth century we find **n** falling away; as, *ifunde* = *found*; *ibunde* = *bound*; very many of our strong verbs have lost their passive participles, and others at one time showed a tendency to do the same. Cp. *spoke* and *eat* in Shakspeare, for *spoken* and *eaten*.

The passive participle of weak verbs ended in **-d**; as, *lov-e-d*. The primitive form was **-th**, which is still preserved in **un-cou-th**, literally *unknown*; **couth** (O.E. *cuth*) being the p.p. of *can*.

The adjectival character of the verbal suffixes **-en** (**-n**) and **-ed**, is seen by comparing them with the endings in *gold-en*, *silken*; *hot-headed*, *one-eyed*, &c.

## Anomalous Verbs.

208. **Be**. The conjugation of the substantive verb contains three distinct roots, as, **be**, **was**.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. am	1. are
2. art	2. are
3. is	3. are

#### *Past Tense.*

1. was	1. were
2. wast, wert*	2. were
3. was	3. were

\* Obsolete.

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

Sing.		Plur.
1, 2, 3. be		1, 2, 3. be

*Past Tense.*

1, 2, 3. were		1, 2, 3. were
2. wert		

## IMPERATIVE MOOD.

2. be		2. be
Infinitive		to be
Present Participle		being
Passive Participle		been

The oldest forms are :—

Pres. indic. sing.	1. eo-m, beo-m, beo
	2. ear-t, bis-t
	3. is, bi-th
Plural 1, 2, 3.	{ sind, sind-on
	{ beo-th
	{ ar-on
Past indic. sing.	1. wæs
	2. wære
	3. was
„ „ plur.	1, 2, 3. wâr-on
Pres. subj. sing.	1, 2, 3. wes-e, beo, sî
„ „ plur.	1, 2, 3. wes-en, beo-n, sî-n
Past subj. sing.	1, 2, 3. wâr-e
„ „ plur.	1, 2, 3. wâr-en
Imper. sing.	2. wes, beo
„ plur.	2. wes-ath, beo-th
Infin.	wes-an, beo-n
Act. part.	wes-ende
Pass. part.	gewes-en

In the thirteenth century *sindon* (*are*) gives place to *beoth*, or *beth*. In M.E. *are* becomes very common.

*Wesan* (infin.) seems to have dropped out of use in the twelfth century, leaving *beon* or *ben* as the ordinary form in use. About the same time *gewesen* (p.p.) disappeared, and a new p.p. *ibeon* (*ben*) came into use.

In M.E. we find the pres. part. *be-ende* = *be-ing*.

Negative forms were common in the first three periods. Cp. O.E. *neom* (*am not*), *neart* (*art not*), *nis* (*is not*), *næs* (*was not*), *næron* (*were not*).

*A-m* (= *ar-m* = *as-m*) contains the root *as*, and *m*, the ending of the first person.

*Ar-t* (= *as-t*) has the old *-t* of the second person, as in *shal-t*, *wil-t*, &c.

*Is* (= *as* = *as-th*) has lost its suffix *-th*.

*Are* (= *ase*) represents the old Northern *ar-on*, and is of Scandinavian origin. It has altogether replaced the O.E. *sind*.

*Was*. This is the past tense of the strong verb, *wesan to be*. It has therefore no endings to mark the first and third persons.

*Wast*. The true form would be *were* (O.E. *wære*) but *wast* arose in the fourteenth century, through the use of *was* as a second person in Northern writers of the thirteenth century.

“With ropes *were* thou bounde.”

FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 430.

“How *were* thou than baptized?”

MERLIN, p. 428.

“Before the sun, before the heavens thou *wert*.”

MILTON, *Par. Lost*.

*Wer-t* for *wast* has evidently been formed from the older *were* (= *wære*). It has established itself as a subjunctive form.

*Were* (= *wes-en*) has, like *are*, lost its personal endings.



The root *be* was conjugated in the present tense, indicative, as late as Milton's time.

I be	we be	(bin)*
thou beest	ye be	„
he be	they be	„

“If thou *beest* he.”—MILTON, *P. L.* i. 84.

“If thou *be'st* civil.”

BEAUMONT and FLETCHER, *I.* p. 96.

“I think it *be* thine indeed.”—*Hamlet*.

“We *are* true men, we *are* no spies, we *be* twelve brethren.”  
—*Gen.* xlii. 32.

“For you *be* as untrue as I.”

HEYWOOD, *The Four P.P.*

“The Philistines *be* upon thee.”—*Judges*, xvi. 9.

In M.E. *beth* and *bes* are used for the third pers. sing. indic.; and for the third pers. future, instead of our *shall be*.

209. **Worth** = *be*.

This verb occurs in the English Bible.

“Wo *worth* the day”

= woe *be* to the day.—*Ezek.* xxx. 2.

“Wo *worth* the faire gemme vertuelesse !

Wo *worth* that herb also that doth no boote !

Wo *worth* that beauté that is routheles !

Wo *worth* that wyght that tret ech under foote !”

CHAUCER, *Tr. & Cr.* ii. 49. ll. 344-7.

The O.E. *weorthan* (pret. *wearth*, p.p. *worden*) *to become*, occasionally replaced *wesan* and *beon*, *to be*. In M.E. *worthe* = *to be*, as well as *to become*. In the third person *worth* = *shall be*.

“What shal *worthe* of us.”—*M. Arth.* l. 1817, ed. Furnivall.

“For-þi I conseilte alle þe comune to lat the catte *worthe*.”

*Piers Plowman*, B. Prol. l. 187.

“To-morwe *worth* ymade þe maydenes bruydale.”

*Ib.* ii. l. 43.

“This maide *werth* a slepe.”—*Early Eng. Poems*, xxi. 38.

## 210. Can.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

	Sing.	Plur.
1. can		1. can
2. canst		2. can
3. can		3. can

*Past Tense.*

1. could		1. could
2. couldst (coudest)		2. could
3. could		3. could

In O.E. can was thus conjugated :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. can, con 2. can-st 3. can	1. cunn-on 2. „ 3. „
Past Indic.	1. cu-the 2. cu-th-est 3. cu-the	1. cu-th-on 2. „ 3. „
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. cunn-e	1, 2, 3. cunn-on
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. cu-the	1, 2, 3. cu-th-on
Pass. Part.	cu-th	Infin. cunn-an

Can (1st and 3rd persons) has no personal suffix, because it was originally a strong form signifying *I knew*. Cp. *shall*, *may*, *wot*, &c.

Coul-d (= O.E. *cu-the*, M.E. *couthe*, *cou-de*) is a weak form. The letter l has crept in from false analogy to the past tenses of *shall* and *will*.

“ And the Normans ne *couthe* speke tho bote hor owe speche.”  
—*Spec. of E. Eng.* I. A. 215.

The verb can (con) once signified *to be able*, *to know*.

"Thou shalt never *conne* knowen."

CHAUCER.

"Thou schalt not *kunne* seie nay."

PECOCK, *Skeat's Spec.* p. 59

"I *can* many a quaint game."

*The World and the Child, O.E. Plays*, I. p. 245.

"I trow thou *canst* but little skill of play."—*Ib.* I. p. 261.

"For we be clerks all, and *can* our neck verse."

HICKSCORNER, *O.E. Plays*, I. p. 159.

"A mous that moche good *couth* (knew)."

*Piers Plowman*, B. p. 8.

"O she *could* the art of woman most feelingly."

WEBSTER, ed. Dyce, p. 250.

Shakespeare has "to *con* thanks" = *to acknowledge* or *give thanks*.

"I *can* thee thank."—*The Four Elements, O.E. Plays*, I. p. 47.

"So give me som thyng that I may *conne* the thanke for."

*Merlin*, p. 73.

"Lutel thonk ye me *cuthe*."—*O.E. Misc.* p. 81, l. 274.

"Thai *conned* [*cund* C.] him ful litel thank."

*Cursor Mundi*, F. l. 6398.

**Con**, *learn, study* (*con* a lesson), has *conned* for past tense and p.p.

**Cunning** (adj.) = *knowing*, is a present participle of *can*, or *con*. It is also found as an abstract noun = *knowledge*.

"And yhit thai er ful *unkunand*."

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 152.

"*Cunning* Latin books."

*The Four Elements, O.E. Plays*, I. 7.

"Works of *cunning*."—*Ib.*

"Nother (neither) virtue nor no other *cunning*."

*Ib.* p. 22.

**Couth** in *uncouth* is the old p.p. of *can*. See Chaucer's *C. T. Prol.* l. 14.

"Mayde to the he send (sends) his sonde (message)

And wilneth (wishes) for to beo (be) the *cuth* (known)."

*O.E. Misc.* p. 96, l. 104.

## 211. Dare.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. dare	1. dare
2. darest (dar'st)	2. dare
3. dares (dare)	3. dare

*Past Tense.*

1. durst	1. durst
2. durst	2. durst
3. durst	3. durst

## SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

Sing. 1, 2, 3. dare
Plur. 1, 2, 3. dare

*Past Tense.*

Sing. 1, 2, 3. durst
Plur. 1, 2, 3. durst

## Old English conjugation of Dare.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. dear	1. durr-on
	2. dears-t	2. „
	3. dear	3. „
Past Indic.	1. dors-te	1. dors-t-on
	2. dors-t-est	2. „
	3. dors-te	3. „
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. durr-e	1, 2, 3. durr-on
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. dors-te	1, 2, 3. dorst-on
Inf.	durr-an	

**Dare.** The root is *dars*, which appears in the past tense, **durst**.

The old 3rd person singular **dare** (M.E. *dar*) has given place to **dares**, the former being used only in

the subjunctive mood. Cp. *Tempest*, iii. 2, *Rich. II.* v. 5.

Dare, *to challenge*, makes a new past tense and p.p. dared. Cp. owe, ought, and owed.

## 212. Shall.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. shall	1. shall
2. shalt	2. shall
3. shall	3. shall

#### *Past Tense.*

1. should	1. should
2. shouldst, shouldest	2. should
3. should	3. should

Shall was conjugated in O.E. as follows :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. sceal 2. sceal-t 3. sceal	1. scul-on 2. „ 3. „
Past Indic.	1. sceol-de 2. sceol-d-est 3. sceol-de	1. sceol-d-on 2. „ 3. „
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. scyl-e	1, 2, 3. scyl-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. sceol-de	1, 2, 3. sceol-d-on
Infin.	scul-an	

One of the oldest senses of shall is *owe*.

“ And by that feith I *shal* to God and yow.”

CHAUCER, *Tr. and Cr.* l. 1600

“ Voryef me thet ich the *ssel*.”

= Forgive me that I owe thee.

*Ayenbite*, p. 115.

“ Hu micel *scealt* thū.”

= How much owest thou.

*Luke* xvi. 5.

“ Ân, se hym *sceolde* tyn thûsend punda.”

= One that owed him ten thousand pounds.

*Matt.* xviii. 24.

Another early meaning arising from the notion of debt is obligation, necessity; hence **shall** often signifies *ought*, *must*.

“ Be ðre æ he *sceal* sweltan.”

= By our law he ought to die.

*John* xix. 7.

“ Men seyn, sche *schalle* endure in that forme.”

MAUNDEVILLE, p. 4.

“ Thou *shalt* not steal.”

“ You *should* listen more attentively.”

It must be recollected that **shall** is only a tense auxiliary, that is a sign of the future, in the *first* person. The following doggerel lines point out the distinctive uses of **shall** and **will**.

“ In the first person simply **shall** foretells,  
In **will** a threat, or else a promise dwells;  
**Shall**, in the second and the third, does threat;  
**Will** simply then foretells a future feat.”

Grimm supposes that the original meaning of *shal* is *I have killed*, I must pay the fine or (*wergeht*); hence, I am obliged, I must. The idea of *failure*, *offence*, *guilt*, is seen in Sansk. *skhal*, to fail; Lat. *scelus*, fault, crime.

A strange mingling of *should* and *owe* occurs in Fabyan's *Chronicle*, p. 257.

“ Obedience that he *should owe* (= owed) to the see of Canterbury.”



## 213. Will.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. will	1. will
2. wilt	2. will
3. will	3. will

*Past Tense.*

1. would	1. would
2. wouldst	2. would
3. would	3. would

O.E. conjugation of will.

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. wile, wille	1. will-ath
	2. wil-t	2. „
	3. wile	3. „
Past Indic.	1. wol-de	1. wol-d-on
	2. wol-d-est	2. „
	3. wol-de	3. „
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. wille	1, 2, 3. will-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. wol-de	1, 2, 3. wol-d-on
Infin.	will-an	Pres. Part. will-ende

The original meaning of will is *to desire, wish* (cp. Lat. *volo*).

In M.E. we find a form *wol*, *will*, which still survives in *won't* = *wol not*. *Nill* = *will not*, occurs in *Hamlet*, v. 1; *Taming of the Shrew*, ii. 1.

In O.E. we find two weak verbs, *willan* and *willian*, *to desire, wish*. *Willan* survives in the verb *will*, *to desire, be*

*willing, to exercise the will*, which is conjugated regularly as an independent verb : 1. *will*, 2. *willest*, 3. *willeth*, *wills*, &c., past tense *willed*. But we often find in the older periods the two forms mixed up.

“ Wel a<sup>3</sup>te i<sup>h</sup>c *willen* hire to wif.”

*Fl. and Bl.* p. 67.

“ They ne shuld not *willen* so.”

CHAUCER, R. 6923.

“ Gif thu *wilt*, thu miht me geclænsian : Ic *wille* ; beo geclænsod.”

=“ If thou *wilt*, thou mayest make me clean. I *will* ; be cleansed.”—*Matt.* viii. 2, 3.

“ Abraham *wald* in his liue,  
That Ysaac had wed a wiue.”

*Cursor Mundi*, G. l. 3215.

“ Abraham *willed* in his lyue,  
That Isaac hadde weddede a wyue.”

*Ib.* T.

“ For in evil, the best condition is not to *will* ; the second, not to *can*.”—BACON, *Ess.* xi.

The old p.p. *wold* for *wild*, or *willed*, was in use as late as the beginning of the sixteenth century.

“ The fomy bridel with the bitte of gold,  
Governeth he ryght as himselfe hath *wolde*.”

CHAUCER, *Leg. Didonis*, l. 284.

“ How be it he myghte have entred the cytie if he had *wolde*. (= wished).—FABYAN, *Chronicle*, p. 625.

## 214. May.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. may	1. may
2. mayst, mayest	2. may
3. may	3. may

*Past Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. might	1. might
2. mightst, mightest	2. might
3. might	3. might

The oldest forms of may are :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. mæg 2. meah-t 3. mæg.	1. mægon 2. „ 3. „
Past. Indic.	1. meah-te	1. meah-t-on
Pres. Subj.	1, 2, 3. mæge	1, 2, 3. mæg-en
Past Subj.	1, 2, 3. meah-te	1, 2, 3. meah-t-on
Infin. mag-an	Pres. Part. mæg-ende.	Pass. Part. meah-t

The *y* in *may* represents an older *g* (cp. Ger. *mögen*). Sometimes *g* passes into *w*, hence the M.E. *I mow*, *I may*; *I mought*, *I might*; pres. part. *mowende*, *mowyng*; pass. part. *moght*.

*Mayst* is a new form that arose in M.E. for *mih-t*, (See Chaucer's *Astrolabe*, p. 3).

*May* has the force of the Lat. *posse*, *to be able*. It is the preterite of an old root *mag*, to *increase*, *grow*, which exists in *mai-n*, (O.E. *mæg-en*), *migh-t*.

“ Helle gatu ne *mægon* ongeân þe.”

= Hell's gates *cannot prevail* against thee.

*Matt.* xvi. 18.

“ Thatt ifell gast *ma33* oferr tha

Thatt foll3hen barness thæwess.”

= The evil ghost *has power* over those that follow  
bairns' habits.

*Orm.* i. p. 279.

“ If thou *maist* ony thing, help us.”

WICKLIFFE, *Mark* ix. 4

“ Thai salle *mow* passe aywhare thai wille.”

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* l. 7993

“As nere as they shall *mowe* (be able).”

*Nat. MSS. I. 20, Hen. VII.* Quoted in  
Earle's *Phil. of Eng. Tongue*, p. 284.

“To lakken *mowyng* (power) to done yuel.”

CHAUCER, *Boethius*, ed. Morris, p. 124.

## 215. Owe.

### INDICATIVE MOOD.

#### *Present Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
owe	1. owe
2. owest	2. owe
3. oweth	3. owe

#### *Past Tense.*

1. ought	1. ought
2. oughtest	2. ought
3. ought	3. ought

Inf. owe

Pres. Part. owing

O.E. forms of Owe :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. âh	1. âg-on
	2. âg-e	2. „
	3. âh	3. „
Past Indic.	1. âh-te	1, 2, 3. âh-t-on
Inf.	âg-an ;	Pres. Part. âg-ende ;
	Pass. Part. âg-en.	

In M.E. we find some new forms, as, *owest* ( = *âge*) ;  
*ought* and *owed* ( = *agen*, p.p.).

The original meaning of *owe* is *to possess, have* ;  
whence the secondary notion, *to have as a duty, to*  
*owe, to be under an obligation.*

*Oughte* is of course a weak past tense, and is now

used as a present and past tense to signify moral obligation.

When *owe* signifies to be in debt, it is conjugated regularly.

1. *Owe*, 2. *owest*, 3. *owes*, *oweth*, &c.; past tense and p.p. *owed*.

*Ought*, in older writers, is used as the past tense of *owe*, *to be in debt*.

“*Thu 3ulde thet thou ouhtest.*”

= Thou didst pay what thou didst *owe*.

*Ancren Riwele*, p. 406.

“*He ow3te to him 10,000 talents.*”

WICKLIFFE, *Matt.* xviii. 24.

“One of his fellow servants which *ought* him an hundred pence.”—*BECON*, I. 154.

“*There of the Knight, the which that castle ought,  
To make abode that night he greatly was besought.*”

SPENSER, *F. Q.* VI. iii. 2.

See Shakspeare's 1 *Henry IV.* iii. 3.

*Own* is a derivative of *owe*.

Examples of *owe* as an independent verb :—

“*Hwæt dô ic thæt ic êce lif âge?*”

= What must I do that I may have everlasting life?

*Mark*, x. 17.

“*Ahte ic geweald.*”

= Had I power.—*Cæd.* p. 23, l. 32.

“*The mon the lutel ah.*”

= The man that has little.—*La3.* 3058.

“*To makien hire cwen of al thet he ouhte.*”

= To make her queen of all that he possessed.

*Ancren Riwele*, p. 390.

“*Steuken that the lond auht.*”

R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l. 3092.

“*Ye shal owe and have everlasting life.*”

*Gest. Rom.* p. 29.

“ I am not worthy of the wealth I *owe*.”

*All's Well that Ends Well*, II. 5.

“ *Owing* her heart, what need you doubt her ear.”

FORD.

*Owe* as an auxiliary appears in *Lazamon's Brut*, l. 8289,  
“ he *ah* to don ” = *he has to do, he should do*.

“ Evel *owe* no mon to do to other.”

*Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 1973.

## 216. Must.

**Must** was originally the past tense of the old verb, *motan* (Ger. *müssen*) *to be able, be obliged*; it is now used in all persons and tenses, to denote necessity and obligation.

The O.E. forms are :—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. môt	1. môt-on
	2. môt	2. „
	3. môt	3. „
Past Indic.	1. môt-te	1, 2, 3. môt-on

The old verb **mot** had the sense of *may, can, must, &c.*; and **must** = *might, could, &c.*

In the sense of *may*, **mot** is found as late as 1522 in *The World and the Child*.

“ But, Sir Frere, evil *mot* thou the [thrive].”

*O.E. Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, p. 257.

Spenser occasionally employs it though it had become archaic in his time (see *Faerie Queene*, i. 2, 37).

The **s** in **must** does not belong to the root, but was inserted to unite the suffix **-t** of the second person, and **-te** of the past tense to the root; **most** (second person) = **mot-s-t** = **mot-t**.

O.E. **wâst** (knowest) = **wat-s-t**; **mo-s-te** (past tense) = **mot-s-te** = **mot-te**; O.E. **wiste** (knew) = **wit-s-te** = **wit-te**.



## 217. Wit.

## INDICATIVE MOOD.

*Present Tense.*

Sing.	Plur.
1. wot	1. wot
2. wot [wottest] <sup>1</sup>	2. wot
3. wot [wotteth]	3. wot

*Past Tense.*

1. wist [wotted]	1. wist [wotted]
2. wist	2. wist [wotted]
3. wist [wotted]	3. wist [wotted]

Inf. to wit      Pres. Part. witting [wotting]

The O.E. *witan* was thus conjugated:—

	Sing.	Plur.
Pres. Indic.	1. wât	1. wit-on
	2. wâs-t	2. „
	3. wât	1, 2, 3. „
Past Indic.	1. wis-te	wis-t-on
Infin. wit-an.	Pres. Part. wit-ende.	Pass. Part. wit-en. [M.E. iwis-t].

**Wot** was originally the perfect of the root **wit** (cp. Lat. *video*, Gr. *οἶδα*, *I know*, from *ἰδεῖν*, *to see*), and meant “I have seen,” hence “I know.”

Its infinitive to **wit** is used now only as an adverb = *namely*.

The pres. part. exists in **wittingly**.

For the presence of **s** in **wist**, see **must**, § 216, p. 181.

<sup>1</sup> The words in brackets are later formations.

The pass. part. appears in *unwist*, *unknown*, *undiscovered* (Surrey); and in the old proverb, "beware of *had-I-wist*," i.e. "beware of saying regretfully *had I known*."

"Dead long ygoe, I *wote*, thou haddest bin."

SPENSER, *F. Q.* i. 2, 20.

See *Gen.* xxi. 26.

"But *wottest* thou what I say, man."

*The World and the Child*, O.E. Plays, i. p. 264.

"Again, who *wotteth* not what words were spoken against St. Paul."—JEWEL'S *Apol.* ed. Jelf, p. 3. See *Gen.* xxxix. 8.

"He *wist* not what to say."—*Mark* ix. 6.

"And why he left your court, the gods themselves, *wotting* no more than I, are ignorant."—*Winter's Tale*, iii. 2.

"I do thee well *to wit*."

J. HEYWOOD, *the Pardoner and the Friar*.

"Wouldest thou *wit*?"—*Everyman*, O.E. Plays, i. p. 103.

"For, *wit* thou well, thou shalt make none attorney."—*Ib.*

"I woll handle my captive so,

That he shall not well *wot* wither to go."

*Jack Juggler*, O.E. Plays, ii. p. 115.

218. Do, in "this will *do*," has the sense of the Lat. *valere*. It represents the O.E. *dugan*, E.E. *duhen*, *avail*, *be good*, (Ger. *taugen*) cp. *doughty* = *valiant*.

O.E. *dug-an*.

Pres. Indic. Sing.

1. *deâh*

2. *dug-e*

3. *deâh*

" " Plur.

1, 2, 3. *dug-on*

Past. Indic. Sing.

*doh-te*

"Ring ne broche nabbe *3e...ne* no swuch thing thet ou ne *deih* [= *deah*]."

= Have neither ring nor broach, nor any such thing that is not good for you to have.—*Ancren Riwle*, p. 421.

"And sau that his dede litel *doh* [= *did*, *availed*]."

*Met. Hom.* p. 149.

"What *dowes* me the dedayn."

= What avails me the displeasure.

*Allit. Poems*, p. 90.

"That noȝt *dowed* bot the deth in the depe stremez."

- That nought availed, but the death in the deep streams.

*Ib.* p. 47.

219. **Own** = *grant, confess*, has probably arisen out of O.E. *an*, (E.E. *on*) = *I grant, unnn-on, we grant*; O.E. *unnan* (Ger. *gönnen*), *to grant*.

"Ich *on* wel that ȝe witen."

= I own well that ye know.—*Kath.* 1761.

"ȝif thu hit wel *unnest*."

= If thou well conceded it.—*Ancren Riwele*, p. 282.

220. **Mun** = *shall, must*.

"I *mun* be married a Sunday."

*Ralph Roister Douster*, before 1553.

In the fourteenth century *mun* (*mon*) as an auxiliary verb = *shall, must*, was very common in the Northern dialects.

"I *mun* walke on mi way."—*Ant. Arth.* xxv. 3.

"—than *mon* he gyf lyght

Als fer als the sone dose and ferrer."

HAMPOLE, *P. of C.* p. 246.

"Thai thoght that kynd him *mond* forbede."

= They thought that nature would forbid him.

*C. Mundi*, C. l. 1105.

The original meaning of *mun*, *mon*, was *I have remembered*; hence, *I intend, mind*.

	Pres.	Perf.	Inf.
O.E.	ge-man	ge-munde	ge-munan (meminisse)
Icel.	man }	munda }	muna (recordari)
	mun }	munna }	munu } (μύλλειν)
			mundu }

“The hertes costes we agen to *munen*.”

= We ought to remember the hart's habits.

*O.E. Misc.* p. 12. l. 370.

“He wolde *mone*.”

= He would remember.

R. OF BRUNNE, *Chronicle*, l. 4811.

221. The verb *need*, when followed by an infinitive, sometimes loses its personal ending -s, as “it *need*<sup>1</sup> not be.”

In O.E. to *need* meant only to *compel*, *force*; but from a primitive *thurfan* (Ger. *dürfen*) to *need*, was formed the following:—

Pres. Indic. Sing.	1. thearf	I need
	2. thearf-t	Thou needest
	3. thearf	He needs
„ „ Plur.	1, 2, 3. thurf-on	We need, &c.

In M.E. we find *thar* for *tharf*.

“Have thou ynough, what *thar* the recche or care.”

= If thou have enough, why needeth thee reck or care.

CHAUCER, *C. T.* l. 5911

## Auxiliary Verbs.

222. Auxiliary verbs supply the places of verbal suffixes to form voice, mood, and tense.

The passive voice is expressed by the passive participle, and the verb *to be*.

In O.E. *weorthan* and *wesan* were used with the passive participle to form the passive voice.

**Should** and **would** are often used as signs of the subjunctive mood.

The use of *would*, as an auxiliary of the past subjunctive, is as early as the thirteenth century.

<sup>1</sup> Some explain *need* as subjunctive = *would need*; but cf. *me thinc* in M.E. for *me-thinks*.

**Let** is a sign of the imperative mood, as, *let us go* = *go we*. See § 180, p. 132. In M.E. *let* was used in the same way as *do* = *cause, make*.

The tense auxiliaries are (1) **have, had**; and **is, was** (with intransitive verbs) for the perfect tenses; as, "he *has asked*," "he *is come*."

(2) **Shall and will** for the future; but other shades of a future tense may be expressed by various modes, as, "I *am going* to see him;" "I *am about* to see him;" "I *am upon the point* of seeing him," &c.

(3) **Do and did** are used for forming emphatic tenses, as, "I *do see*," "I *did see*."

**Do and did** originally had a *causative* sense before another verb in the infinitive.

"Thou most *do* me it have."

= Thou must *cause* me to have it.

*Gamelyn*, l. 159.

"And som-tyme *doth* Theseus hem to reeste."

= And sometimes Theseus *makes* them to rest.

*Knights Tale*.

In the fourteenth century **did** was not uncommon as a mere tense auxiliary.

"Summe gouleden and summe *dude brenne*."

= Some yelled and others did burn.—*O.E. Misc.* p. 224.

In M.E. **gan, can, con** (began) was used for **did**.

"His stede he *gan bistride*

And forth he *gan ride*."—*Horn.* p. 22.

"Hi *gunnen* ut ride,

And funden on a grene

A geaunt."—*Ib.* p. 22.

"Gret ioi *can* his frendes mak[e]."

*Cursor Mundi*, C. l. 3016.

"Criste of hym his crowne *con take*."

*Pol. Rel. and Love Poems*, p. 97, l. 121.

## CHAPTER XI.

## Adverbs.

223. Adverbs are, for the most part, abbreviations of words or phrases, or cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns.

According to their origin or form, we may divide them into the following classes :—

224. I. Adverbs derived from Nouns and Adjectives.

**Genitive.**—Need-s = *of necessity*; M.E. *nedes*; E.E. *nêde* (instr.).

A-night-s, now-a-day-s, al-way-s, be-time-s, el-se (O.E. *elles*), eft-soon-s, un-a-ware-s, on-ce, twi-ce, thri-ce, whil-s-t, a-mid-s-t, a-mong-s-t, be-twi-x-t.

Twice = O.E. *twi-wa*, E.E. *twi-e*, M.E. *twies*; thrice = O.E. *thri-wa*, E.E. *thrie*, M.E. *thries*; -wa = -war = *time*; once, O.E. *æne*, E.E. *ene*, M.E. *an-es*, *on-es*, *an-s*, *on-s*.

The -st in *whilst*, &c. represents an older -es(-s). Cp. M.E. *whil-es*, *amidd-es*, *among-es*, &c.

**Dative.**—Whil-om (O.E. *hwil-um*), from *while* = *time*. Seld-om (O.E. *seld-um*) from O.E. *seld* = *rare*.



All adverbs ending in *-meal* once had the dative suffix *-um*. Cp. O.E. *lim-mæl-um* = *limb-meal*. The suffix *-um* formed distributives like Latin *-im*. Cp. M.E. *table-mele* = Latin *tabillatim*.—Palladius on *Husbondrie*, p. 66.

*Little by little* = M.E. *lytlum* and *lytlum*.

**Accusative.**—Alway (O.E. *ealne-weg*), otherwise, sometime, the while, now-a-day, backward, &c.

**Prepositional Forms.**—The chief prepositions used to form adverbial expressions are, *a*, (*an*), *on*, *in*, *at*, *of*, *be*, (*by*), *to*.

**An** = *in*, *on*: *anon* = *in one second*. In M.E. we find *on-an* = *anon*.

**A** = *in*, *on*: *a-bed*, *a-day*, *a-sleep*, *a-loft*, &c.; *a-broad*, *a-cold*, *a-good*, *a-twain*, &c.

**On**, *in*: *on sleep*, *on high*, *in-deed*, *in vain*, *in short*, *in two*, &c.

**At**: *at jar*, *at odds*, *at large*, *at night*, *at length*, *at best*, *at first*, &c.

**Of** (for *a*): *of kin*, *of late*, *of old*, *of new*; *Of* (for older genitives), *of a truth*, *of right*.

**Be**, *by*: *be-times*, *be-cause*, *by turns*, *by degrees*, *by hundreds*.

**To**: *to-day*, *to-night*, *to-gether*.

**Per**: *per-chance*, *per-haps*.

**An** (= *in*, *on*) occurs in E.E. and M.E. before words beginning with a *vowel* or *h*; as, *an eve*, *in the evening*; *an honde*, *in hand*.

**A** is used before words beginning with a consonant.

"Ich am nu elder than ich was *a* wintre and *a* lore."—O.E.

*Hom.* ii. 220.

This *a* was a separate word as late as the seventeenth century. It is very common before verbal nouns. Cp. *a-fishing*, *a-hunting*, *a-weeping*.

As *on* is only another form of *an*, it has replaced *an* before a vowel.

“Set our teeth *an* edge [= *on* edge].”

*The Four Book of Princes*, p. 116.

A and on, sometimes occur side by side : a-board and on board, a-ground and on ground.

An takes the place of in, in the phrase “ever and anon ;” where *an-on* = M.E. in *oon*, in one state.

“*Ever in oon.*”—CHAUCER, *Astrolabe*, p. 15.

“Ever and *anon* it (earth) must turn about.”

HOLLAND'S *Pliny*, p. 1.

Sometimes *an end* = *in oon* = *continually*.

As of takes the place of a in *akin*, &c. so a sometimes takes the place of of.

“I have heard *a* the horses walking *a'* (on) the top of Paules.”

—DEKKER, *Satiromastix*, C. 2.

“What manner *a* man.”—BECON.

Cp. “*a* the appel tre” = *o* that appel tre = of the apple tree.—*C. Mundi*, p. 86.

This *a* for *o* or of explains ; man-*a*-war, justice-*a*-peace (Dekker) ; two-*a*-clock = two *o'* clock = two *of* the clock ; jack-*an*-apes.

In M.E. we find *of* long, *of* new, *of*-fer (afar), and even *of goo* = *ago* (cp. O.E. *of-gân*, to go off).

Be sometimes preceded the dative adverb in O.E. as *be ânfealdum* = *by one fold* = *singly*, from which we have formed our expressions, *by hundreds* and *by fifties* = O.E. *be hundredum* and *be fiftigum*. In E.E. the dative ending dropped, and we have *bi sixe*, *bi seove*, = *by sixes*, *by sevens*, &c. Cp. *by piecemeal* for *piecemeal*, (Beaumont and Fletcher).

At especially before superlatives is a contraction of *at the*, M.E. *atte*. In O.E. this *the* was in the dative case. *At random* = Fr. *à randon*.

225. Many adjectives are used as adverbs, especially those with irregular comparisons : *far*, *forth*, *ful*, *ill*, *late*, *little*, *much*, *nigh*, *near*, *well*.

Many monosyllabic adjectives are used as adverbs, as, to work hard ; to talk fast ; to speak loud ; to aim high.

In the earlier stages of the language, the *adverbial* form was marked by a final *-e*, as, *hard* (adj.), *hard-e* (adv.), &c. When this *-e* became silent, then the adjectival and adverbial form became identical.

We can thus easily understand the use of *godly* as adjective and adverb; (cp. "a *godly* life," and "to live *godly*.") In O.E. the distinction was plainly marked, e.g., *god-lic* (adj.), *god-lic-e* (adv.).

The adverbial *-e* was probably a *dative* suffix. In M.E. we find instances of the use of this *-e*: they pleye *hastiliche* and *swifliche* (Trevisa).

In the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, the suffix *-ly* was often dropped: as,

"*Foolish* bold."

BECON.

"*Grievous* sick."

SHAKESPEARE.

Cp. "*Wondrous* wise."

The history of *wondrous* (wonderfully) is a curious one. In O.E. the adverb was *wundr-um*, which in M.E. became *wunder*, *wonder*, T.E. *wonders*. In E.E. we find *wunderliche*, in M.E. *wonderli*; and in T.E. *wondersly*. In Ford's works we find "*woundy* bad," i.e. *wonderfully* or *very* bad.

## 226. II. Pronominal Adverbs.

Many adverbs are derived from the pronominal stems, *the*, *he*, *who*.

PRONOMINAL STEMS.	PLACE WHERE.	MOTION TO.	MOTION FROM.	TIME WHEN.	MANNER.	CAUSE.
who	where	whither	whence	when	how	why
the	there	thither	thence	then	thus	the
he	here	hither	hence	—	—	—

The suffixes **-re** and **-ther** in *the-re*, *he-re*, *where*, *thi-ther*, &c., were originally locative.

The **-n** in *the-n*, *where-n*, &c., is an accusative suffix. See pronouns, § 131, p. 107; § 146, p. 119.

The **-ce** (M.E. **-es**), in *then-ce*, &c., represents an older **-an**, cp. O.E. *than-an* (thence); *heon-an* (hence); *hwan-an* (whence).

The O.E. **-an** denotes motion from: *east-an* = *from the east*; so *thence* = *than-an* = *from that* (place).

**The**, before comparatives, as, **the more** (= O.E. *thî mære*, Lat. *eo magis*) is the instrumental case of the definite article, **the**.

**Lest** has lost the instrumental **the**. In O.E. we find *thý las the*, E.E. *les the*, M.E. *leste* = **lest**.

**Thus** is the instrumental case of **this**.

**How** (O.E. *hu*, E.E. *hwu*), and **why** (O.E. *hwî*), are the inst. cases of **who**. Cp. *for-why* = *for which* (reason), *wherefore*; *for-thy* = *for that* (reason), *therefore*.

**Yea**, **ye-s**, **ye-t**, are from a relative stem **ya**, which also had a demonstrative force, as in **yon**, **yond**, **yonder**.

**That** and **so** are often used as *affirmative* adverbs.

In **nay**, **no**, **not**, **now**, we have a demonstrative stem, **na**.

In O.E. *ne* = *not*.

"Eart thû of thyres leorning-cnihtum? *nic ne eom ic*."

= Art thou of this man's disciples? not I, I am not.

*John* xviii. 17.

Negatives are often repeated for emphasis:—

"*Ne nân ne dorste nân thing âcsian*."

= No one durst ask him anything.

*Matt.* xxii. 46.

"*Ne eom ic nâ Crist.*"—*John* i. 18.

"But he *ne* lefte nought for rayn *ne* thonder."

CHAUCER, *Prolog.* l. 492.

O.E. *ne* was also a conjunction = *nor*. See Spenser, *Faerie Queene*, I. i. 28.

**Not** (= O.E. *nôht*, M.E. *noght*, *nat*) = *no whit*, (nothing), has replaced the old *nâ*, *ne*. It has already been shown to be an indefinite pronoun. See **aught**, § 164, p. 125.

"Ne wen thu *nawiht* leoue feder that tu affeare me swa  
= ne lef thu *nawt* leoue feader that tu offeare me swa.  
Ween thou not dear father that thou may frighten me  
so."—*Juliana*, pp. 12, 13.

"Ac hit ne helpeth heom *nowiht*."—*O.E. Misc.* p. 152.

**Aught**, **naught**, **nothing**, **something**, **some-what**, **muchwhat**, **anywhit**, &c. may be used as adverbs.

**So** (= O.E. *swâ*) was used as a relative pronoun in E.E.; from it we derive also (O.E. *ealswa*), which, by loss of *l*, has dwindled down to **as** = M.E. *ase* = E.E. *alse* = O.E. *eal-swa*.

**Ay**, sometimes used for **yes**, is the same as the adverb **aye** = *ever*.

For **ever** or **aye** we find in O.E. *a*; E.E. *o*, *oo*, *ay*, *ey*. Cp. O.E. *â-hwær*, *æg-hwær* = *anywhere*; E.E. *o-whar*, *eihwer*.

**What** (O.E. *hwæt*) = *why* (Lat. *quid*) is an adverb:—

'*What* do you prate of service?'

SHAKESPEARE, *Cor.* iii. 3.



## 227. III. Adverbs formed from Prepositions.

Aft, in "fore and *aft*;" O.E. *æf-t-an*, after. Af is another form of of (= *from*). Cp. *af-ter*, *af-ter-wards*.

Be, by, *by and by*, *hard-by*, *be-sides*, *be-hind*, *b-ut be-neath*, &c.

For, *for-th*, *for-thwith*, *a-fore*, *forward* (= M.E. *forth-ward*).

Fro = *from*; "to and fro."

In, *with-in*, E.E. *in-with*; M.E. *bin* = O.E. *binnan* = *within*.

Neath, *be-neath*, *under-neath*.

Cp. *ne-ther*; O.E. *ni-ther*, and Sansk. *ni* = *down*.

On, *on-ward*, *on-wards*.

Of, *off*; *a-down* (O.E. *of dūn* = *from the hill*). See *aft*.

To, *too*; *to-ward*, &c.

Through, *thorough*, *thoroughly*, *throughly*.

Up, *up-per*, *up-wards*, *upp-er-most*.

Out, *with-out*, *a-b-out*, *b-ut*. (See Prepositions. § 230, p. 195. § 231, p. 196.)

## 228. IV. Compound Adverbs.

Many are given under the head of prepositional forms. (See § 224, p. 188.)

There, here, and where, are combined with (1) prepositions, (2) adverbs, (3) indefinite pronouns to form compound adverbs:—*there-of*, *there-to*, *there-*



*from, there-by, &c.; where-so-ever, where-ever, &c.; else-where, some-where, no-where.*

*Everywhere* = *ever-y-where*, E.E. *ever ihwar* (Ancræn Riwle, p. 200); *y-where* = E.E. *i-hwar*, *i-hwer* = O.E. *ge-hwær*. There was a M.E. *eywhere, aywhere* (which was also combined with *ever*) = O.E. *æg-hwær, everywhere*. Cp. O.E. *āhwær*, M.E. *awher, owher, ouwhar* = *anywhere*.

In O.E. we have very few compounds of *there, here, and where*, with prepositions; but they are numerous in E.E.

The pronominal adverbs and their compounds, as *where, where-of, where-to*, have the force of relative pronouns.

The compounds of *there, here, where*, with prepositions are almost all archaic. We replace *there-of, there-to, &c.* by *of that, of it, to that, to it, &c.*; *where-of, &c.* by *of which, &c.* and *here in, &c.* by *in this, &c.*

These compounds, being followed by the preposition, resemble the construction of *that*, and the O.E. indeclinable relative *the*.

“Thæt bed *the* se lama *on* læg.”

=The bed *that* the lame man lay *on*.

=The bed *whereon* [= on which] the lame man lay.

Mark ii. 4.

“The ston *that* he leonede *to*.”

=The stone *whereto* he leant.

Vernon MS.

Some elliptical expressions containing a verb are used as adverbs, as *may-be, may-hap, how-be-it, as it were, to be sure, to wit*.

## CHAPTER XII.

## Prepositions.

229. Prepositions are so named, because they were originally prefixed to the verb to modify its meaning. Many prepositions still preserve their *adverbial* meaning (cp. *for-swear*, *be-times*, &c.). Some relations denoted by prepositions may be expressed by case-endings. Prepositions are either **simple** or **compound**.

## 230. I. Simple Prepositions.

**At** (O.E. *æt*; Lat. *ad*).

**By** (O.E. *be*, *bi*). The original meaning is *about*, *concerning*. Another form of it is O.E. *umbe*; M.E. *umb*, *um*; cp. Gr. ἀμφί; Lat. *amb*, *am*.

**For** (O.E. *for*, Lat. *pro*).

**Fro-m** (O.E. *fram*).

**Fro** (E.E. *fra*).

The *m* in *from* is a superlative suffix. The roots *for* and *fro* are connected with each other, and with *far* and *fore*. Cp. Lat. *pro*, *per*, *præ*.

**In**, **on** (O.E. *in*, *on*, *an*; Gr. ἐν, Lat. *in*).

**Of**, **off** (O.E. *of* = *from*; Lat. *ab*; Gr. ἀπό).

**Out** (O.E. *ūt*; cp. *utter*, *utmost*).

**To** (O.E. *tō*). It has often the sense of "for."

**Up** (O.E. *up*; Lat. *s-up*).

**With** (O.E. *with*, *wither*, from, against). We have preserved the original force of *with* in *with-stand* &c. The sense of the Lat. *cum* was usually expressed in O.E. by *mid*; Goth. *mith*, Gr. *μέτα*.

## 231. II. Compound Prepositions.

### (1) COMPARATIVES.

**After** (O.E. *æf-ter*), is a comparative of the root *af* = *of* = *from*. The suffix *-ter* is the same as *-ther* in *where*, &c.

**Over** (O.E. *of-er*; Goth. *uf-ar*; Lat. *s-uper*; Gr. *ὑπέρ*), is a comparative of the root *of* or *uf*. We have the same root in O.E. *ufe-weard*; E.E. *uwe-weard* = *upward*, *a-b-ove*.

**Under** (O.E. *under*; Lat. *inter*) contains the root *in* and the comparative suffix *-der* = *-ther*.

In E.E. *under* = *between*; *under that* = *between that*; *meanwhile*.

**Through** (O.E. *thur-h*; Gr. *dur-ch*), contains the same root as the Lat. *tra-us*, from the root *thar* or *tar*, *to go beyond*, *to cross*.

### (2) PREPOSITIONS COMPOUNDED WITH PREPOSITIONS.

**But** (O.E. *b-ut-an*, = *be-ut-an*, *bi-ut-an*) = **be** (*by*) + **ut** (*out*).

**A-b-out** (O.E. *â-b-utan* = *â-be-utan*) = **a** (*on*) + **be** (*by*) + **out**.

**A-b-ove** (O.E. *b-uf-an* = *be-uf-an*) = a (*on*) + be (*by*) + ove (*up*).

**Unto** (M.E. *until*), is a compound of *unt* and *to*. The same root exists in Goth. *und*; O.E. *ôth* = *onth* = *unto*.

*In-to, up-on, be-fore, with-in, through-out, be-neath, under-neath, &c.*

### (3) PREPOSITIONS FORMED FROM NOUNS.

**A-gain, a-gain-s-t** (O.E. *on-geân, tô-gegnes*).

**A-mong** (O.E. *ge-mong, on-ge-mong*; E.E. *on-mang, bi-mong*), a = *on*; *mong* = *ming-l-ing*, mixing. Cp. E.E. *monglen, to mix*; *monglung* = *mingling*.

Other prepositions of this sort are *in-stead of* = *in the place of*, (*stead* = place) = *in lieu of*; *in behalf of*, *by dint of*, *by way of*, *for the sake of*; *a-breast of*, *a-board*, *a-head of*, *a-cross*, *be-side*; *in spite of* = *in despite of*. Sometimes we find *my despite* = *in despite of me*. Cp. the use of *maugre* (Fr. *malgré*) in M.E. *maugre min, in spite of me*; *maugre thaires* = *in spite of them*.

### (4) ADJECTIVE PREPOSITIONS.

**E-re** (O.E. *æ-r*; M.E. *er, ar, or*), *before*. See § 116. p. 95.

**Or**, the M.E. form *or* = *ar* = *ere* occurs in the authorised version of the Bible. See *Ps. xc. 2*; *Prov. viii. 23*.

**Or ere** (= *or er* = *er er*), is a mere reduplication, like *an if*. See *King John, iv. 3*; *Tempest, i. 2*;

*Hamlet*, i. 2. It seems to have acquired the sense of *ere ever*. See Wright's *Bible Word Book*, p. 353.

**Till** (O.E. *til* good; O.N. *til* to). In M.E. we find till used as a sign of the infinitive; it formed numerous compounds as *intil* = *into*, &c.

**Along** (O.E. *and-lang*; E.E. *an-lang*; M.E. *endelong*, *endelonges*).

We sometimes find *alongst* (= *alonges*).

"*Alongst the lee shore.*"

WEBSTER, *Northward Ho*.

"To lie *along*," = *to lie at full length*.

There is another *along* (O.E. *ge-lang*), in the phrase "*along of*," "*long of*," = *on account of*.

"*On hire is al mi lif ilong.*"

O.E. *Misc.* p. 158.

"But if it is *along on me*."

GOWER, *Spec. E. Eng.* xx. 55.

"And that is *long of* contrarie causes."

HOLLAND, *Pliny*, p. 25.

"All *long of* this vile traitor Somerset."

1 *Hen. VI.* iv. 3.

"And this is *long of* her."

FORD.

**A-mid, a-midst** (O.E. *on-midd-um*; M.E. *a-middes*, *a-midde*, *in-middes*), contains the preposition **a** (on) and the adjective **mid** in *middle*, *mid-most*, &c.

Other prepositions of this kind are, *a-round*, *a-slant*, &c.; *an-ent*, respecting = O.E. *on-efn*, *on-enn*, near, toward = E.E. *on-efen-t* = M.E. *anentes*, *anence*; *a-thwart* = across; (O.E. *on thweorh*. Cp. *thweorh* = perverse; Icel. *thvert*, the acc. neut. of *thverr*, across, transverse); *be-low*, *be-twix-t* (O.E. *be-tweox*) from *two*; *be-tween* (O.E. *be-tweon-um*) from *twain*.

Since (O.E. *sith-than*; E.E. *sith-then*, *sith-the* M.E. *sithenes*, *sith*, *sin*, *sins*), from *sith* = *late*; O.E. *si-thor later*; cp. *since when*.

O.E. *sith-than* = *later than*, *after that*.

### (5) VERBAL PREPOSITIONS.

These are new forms that have arisen out of the participial (dative) construction: *owing to*, *notwithstanding*, *out-taken*, (replaced by *except*).

We have numerous participial forms of Romanic origin, as, *according to*, *concerning*, *during*, *except*, *respecting*, *saving*, *touching*.

**Save** = M.E. *sauf*, *except*. See Chaucer, *Knights Tale*, l. 2182.

**Sans** (Fr.) = *sine* (Lat.) has gone out of use. It was occasionally employed by Shakespeare.



## CHAPTER XIII.

## Conjunctions.

232. Prepositions join *words*, one of which is *subordinate* to the other. Conjunctions join *sentences*, and *co-ordinate* terms. Conjunctions are of comparatively late growth, and have sprung from other parts of speech, especially from pronouns, adverbs, and prepositions.

(1) Pronominal.—Yet (O.E. *gy-t*), if (O.E. *gi-f*, M.E. *yi-f*, *ef*, *if*), yea (O.E. *gea*), an-d.

With *and* is connected the archaic conjunction *an* = *if*.

*And* is very often written for *an* by older writers.

“*And* you love me, let’s do’t ; I am dog at a catch.”

*Twelfth Night*, ii. 3.

“I pray thee, Launce, *and if* thou seest my boy,  
Bid him make haste.”

*Two Gentlemen of Verona*, iii. 1.

We occasionally find *but and if* = *but if*; M.E. *but-if* = *unless*.

We have lost the O.E. *ge—ge*, *both—and*; *ac*, *but*; *ne—ne*, *neither—nor*; *swa—swa*, *as well—as*; *oththe—oththe*, *either—or*; *sam—sam*; *the—the*, *whether—or*; *the or thy*, and *for-thy*; *for-tham(than)-the*, *be-tham-the* = *for that that*, *by that that*, *because*; *nu—nu* = *now—now*.

For-why is *scarce* now. It occurs in the Psalms (Prayer Book).

Either—or; neither—nor; or—or, nor—nor, have the same origin as the indefinite pronouns, *either* and *neither*. See § 168, p. 127.

Or is a corruption of *either* (O.E. *æwther*, *âther*) and *nor* of *neither* (O.E. *náther*). In M.E. we find *other—other* = *either—or*; *nother—nother* = *neither—nor*.

“Put not thy fyngerys in thy dysche,  
Nothyr in flesche nothir in fysche.”

*Rabees Book*, p. 18.

“As trewe as steel *either* stoon.”

*Ib.* p. 40.

See Luke vi. 42.

El-se, the genitive of *el* (= *other*), is often supplied by *otherwise*.

So gives rise to *also*, *as*, and *whereas*; the is the root of *though*, (O.E. *theâ-h*) *although*, *then*, *than*, *that*, &c.

The stem of *who* occurs in *what—and* (M.E. *what—what* = *both ... and*), *whether*, *whence*, &c.

(2) **Adverbial** (from nouns).—*Likewise*, (= *in likewise*), *sometimes*, *at times*, *whilst*, *otherwhiles*, *besides*, *be-cause*, *on the contrary*, *in order that*, &c.

*To the end that* (Ex. viii. 22) = O.E. *tô tham that* = *to that that*.

In O.E. *hwîl-um—hwîl-um*; *hwîle—hwîle* = *sometimes—sometimes*.

“*One while* (the moon) bended pointwise into tips of horns; *another whiles* divided just in the half, and *anon* again in a compasse round, spotted *sometime* and darke, and *soon after* on a sudden exceeding bright; *one while* big and full, and *another while*, all at once, nothing to be seene.”—HOLLAND, *Pliny*, p. 6.

(3) **Adverbial** (from adjectives).—*Both—and, even, only, now—anon, furthermore, for as much as, evermore, lastly, firstly, finally, &c.* *Lest* = O.E. *thȳ læs the, læs the*; M.E. *leste*; *natheles* = O.E. *nâ thy læs* = *nevertheless*; *unless* = E.E. *onlesse*.

*Not only—but also* = O.E. *nalæs that ðn that—ac eac swð*; *as soon as* = *sōna swð—swð*. In M.E. we find *na the mo* = *never the more*.

(4) **Prepositional**, many of which have come in along with the demonstrative *that*.—*Ere, after, before, but, for, since, in that, with that, till (= to), until (= unto)*.

In O.E. *ðth that* = *until*; E.E. *a thet*; M.E. *for-to, for-te, fort* (that), *to that* = *until*. Sometimes *the while til*, and *while itself*, do duty for *until*.

*For to* has sometimes the sense of *in order to* (see Gen. xxxi. 18; Ex. xvi. 27).

(5) **Verbal**.—*Say, suppose, to talk of, considering, provided, were it not, how be it, &c.*

## CHAPTER XIV.

## Interjections.

233. Interjections have no *grammatical* relation to other words in a sentence and are not strictly speaking 'parts of speech.' They are either mere exclamations or cries, as, O! ah! eigh! fy! or else elliptical expressions, as *good bye* = *god b' wr' ye* = *God be with you*.

*Zounds* = *God's wounds*; *marry* = the *Virgin Mary*; *grammercy* = *great thanks*.

*Alas, alack*, Fr. *hélas*, from *las* (sad), Lat. *lassus*.

234. Some words (adverbs, verbs), are used as interjections: *how, well, out, hence, begone, look, behold*. Cp. *hail! all hail* = O.E. *wes thu hâl* = *hale be thou*; O.E. *wes hâl* has become *wassail*. See *The Blickling Homilies*, ed. Morris, pp. 3, 5.

A few primitive interjections have come down to us from the oldest English; *ha, eh* (O. E. *ea*), *lo, la*, (O.E. *lâ*), *heigh* (*hig*), *wo!* (O.E. *wâ*), *well-a-way, well-a-day* (O.E. *wâ-lâ-wâ* = *woe-lo-woe*, *what* (O.E. *hwæt*).

## CHAPTER XV.

## Derivation and Word formation.

235. The primary elements and significant parts of words are called **roots**, as *tal* in *talk* and *tell*; *bar*, in *bear*, *bairn*, *birth*, &c.

The root is modified (1) by endings called **suffixes** which form **derivatives**, as, *rich-ly*, *nest-ling*; (2) by particles, placed before the root, called **prefixes**, which form **compounds**, as, *for-bid*, *un-true*.

Two words may be placed together to form compound words, as, *blackbird*.

## SUFFIXES OF TEUTONIC ORIGIN.

## FROM DEMONSTRATIVE ROOTS.

## 236. I. Noun Suffixes.

Some suffixes have sprung from old demonstrative or pronominal roots; others are merely altered forms of nouns and adjectives. The origin of the former is very obscure; that of the latter tolerably certain. Cp. *beauti-ful*, *love-ly*, *glad-some*, &c. See Suffixes of Predicative origin, § 238, p. 209. Many words have an old vowel suffix, as, *-ale* = O.E. *eal-u*; *-hue* = O.E. *heo-w*.

It must be borne in mind—

(1) That many prefixes and suffixes have no longer a living power, that is, are not now used to form new derivatives; as the prefix *for* in *for-swear*, and the suffix *-m* in *gleam*, &c.

(2) That many derivatives were formed from certain ancient roots or stems in the oldest period of our language; as *flight* from *fledgan*, not from the modern *fly*.

*-d* gives a kind of *passive* signification to words formed from verbal roots: *dee-d* from *do* = *that which is done*. Cp. *floo-d* from *flow*; *glee-d* (a live coal) from *glow*; *see-d* from *sow*.

*-er* (O.E. *-ere*), denoting the agent or doer: *bak-er*, *speak-er*, *mill-er*.

Sometimes we find *-ar*, *-or* for *-er*; *begg-ar*, *schol-ar*, *sail-or*.

Under N.Fr. influence *i* or *y* has crept in before *-er*; as, *law-y-er*, *glaz-i-er*, *cloth-i-er*.

*-man* is added to *-er* in *fish-er-man*.

*-t* has crept into *bragg-ar-t*, and *-d* into *dast-ar-d*, *loll-ar-d* (M.E. *lollere*).

*-est*; *earn-est*, *harv-est*.

*-ing*, the ending of verbal nouns, O.E. *-ung*; as, *learn-ing*, *writ-ing*, &c.

*-ing* (O.E. *-ing*) forming diminutives: as, *farth-ing* (from *fourth*), *tith-ing* (from *tithe* = *tenth*), *rid-ing* (from *thrid* = *third*).

This suffix occurs in a few nouns without adding a diminutival force to them:—*kin-g* (O.E. *cyn-ing*):—*shill-ing*, *penn-y* (O.E. *pen-ing*); *whit-ing*, *sweet-ing*. This suffix had originally a possessive force, hence it formed *patronymics*; as, O.E. *Scilf-ing*, the son of *Scilf*; *Æthelwulf-ing*, the son of *Æthelwulf*.

*-l-ing*, made up of *-l* and *-ing*, forms diminutives: *dar-ling* (from *dear*), *gos-ling*, *strip-ling*, *under-ling*.



The addition of the suffix *-ling* has caused *dear*, *goose*, and *stripe*, to shorten their original long vowels. Cp. *nation* and *national*, "to *breūk* a fast," and "to *breūkfast*."

**-k**: haw-**k**, mil-**k**, yol-**k**.

**-kin** (= *-k* + *-in*) forms diminutives: as, lamb-**kin**, lad-**kin**, fir-**kin** (from *four*).

It forms patronymics in Daw-**kin** (from *David*), Per-**kins** (from *Peter*).

**-le**, denoting agent or instrument: as, bead-**le**, (from O.E. *beodan*, to pray); bund-**le** (from *bind*); steep-**le** (from *steep*); sett-**le** (from *seat*); thimb-**le** (from *thumb*).

We find this *l* in *angle*, *apple*, *bramble*, *fiddle*, *saddle*, *shambles*, *fowl*, *hail*, *heel*, *nail*, *sail*, *stile*, (from *sty*, to go up).

**-l, -le** (O.E. *-els*, Ger. *-el*): as, buri-**al**, brid-**le**, gird-**le**, ridd-**le** (from O.E. *ræd-en*, to read, interpret, advise), skitt-**les** (from O.E. *sceôt-an*, to shoot), shew-**el** (a scarecrow).

**-m** (O.E. *-ma, -m*. Cp. Lat. *no-men*): bar-**m** (from *bear*), bloo-**m** (from *blow*), doo-**m** (from *do*): glea-**m** (from *glow*), qual-**m** (from *quell*), sea-**m** (from *sew*), strea-**m** (from *strew*, to scatter, spread), tea-**m** (from *tow, tug*), stea-**m** (from *stew*).

It takes the form of **-om** in *bloss-om*, *bos-om*, *fath-om*.

**-n** (of the same origin as the **-n** in passive participles): bair-**n** (from *bear*), beac-**on** (from *beck*), burd-**en** (from *bear*), heav-**en** (from *heave*), maid-**en**, mai-**n** (from *mag*, to be great), wagg-**on**, wai-**n** (from *wag*).

In *chick-en* (from *cock*), the suffix has a diminutival force; *kitt-en* (from *cat*) = M.E. *kit-oun*. We also find *kit-l-ing* = *kitten*.

**-en** in *vix-en* (from *fox*) was once a common sign of the feminine.

**-nd** (an old present participial ending): *err-and*, *fi-end* (from O.E. *fi-an*, *to hate*), *freo-nd* (from *freo-n*, *to love*), *wi-nd* (from *wa*, *to blow*).

**-ness** (O.E. *-nis*, *-nes*), forming abstract nouns from nouns and adjectives; as, *wit-ness*, *wilder-ness*; *dark-ness*, *good-ness*, &c.

**-ock** (O.E. *-uca*), forming diminutives and patronymics: as, *bull-ock*, *hill-ock*; *pill-ock* (a little *pill*), *Poll-ock* (from *Paul*), *Wil-cox*, *Wil-c-ock* (from *Will*).

In the Scotch dialects we find *ladd-ock*, *wif-ock*. This *-ock* becomes *-ick*, or *-ie* (*-y*); as, *lass-ick*, *lass-ie*. Cp. *mamm-y*, *dadd-y*.

**-r** (instrumental): *finger* (from *fang*, *to take*) *lai-r* (from *lie*), *stai-r* (from *sty*, *to climb*), *timb-er* (from *timb*, *to build*), *wat-er* (from *wet*), *wint-er* (from *wind*).

**-ster** (O.E. *estre*), originally a sign of the feminine gender: as, *spin-ster*.

It merely marks the agent in *song-ster*, *huck-ster*, *malt-ster*, *young-ster*.

*Upholsterer* or *upholster*, is a corruption of *upholder*.

**-s**: *blis-s* (from *blithe*), *eave-s*. It also appears in *adze*, *axe*.

**-th**, **-t** (of the same origin as the *d* in *seed*, &c.). It is used, for the most part, to form abstract nouns from verbs and adjectives: as, *dear-th* (from *dear*), *wid-th* (from *wide*), *heal-th* (from *hale*), *leng-th* (from *long*), *slo-th* (from *slow*), *dea-th* (from *die*), *bir-th* (from *bear*), *ear-th* (from *ear*, *to plough*).

Drough-t (from *dry*, O.E. *drig*) : heigh-t (from *high*), len-ten (from *long*).

Drift-t (from *drive*) : fligh-t (from *fly*, O.E. *fleôgan*), gif-t, (from *give*), migh-t (from *may*, O.E. *mæg*), slaught-er (from *slay*, O.E. *sleáhan*), sigh-t (from *see*, O.E. *seon*, pret. *seah*), draugh-t from *draw* or *drag*, O.E. *dragan*), fros-t, beques-t.

The suffix *t* for *th* is due to the sharp sounds *f*, *gh* (originally *h*), *s*. In O.E. *th* was always sounded flat, as in *thine*.

-ther, -ter, marking the agent : bro-ther, fa-ther, mo-ther, daugh-ter, sis-ter, fos-ter (from *food*).

-ther, -ter, -der, marking the instrument : bladder, (from *blow*), feather (from root *fat*, to *fly*), weather (from *wa*, to *blow*), fodder (from *fa*, to *feed*), ladder (from root *hlī*, to *climb*), murder (from *mar*, to *kill*). Ru-dder (from *row*), laugh-ter.

-y (O.E. -ig, -h) : bod-y, hon-ey. It has become -ow in holl-ow, sall-ow, marr-ow, &c.

-ow also arises out of (1) O.E. -u :—mall-ow, mead-ow, shad-ow. (2) O.E. *ewe* :—swallow.

## 237. II. Adjective Suffixes.

-d (like the *d* in *dee-d*, &c.) : bol-d, col-d, lou-d, love-d, feathere-d, foote-d, &c. See p. 205.

-ish (O.E. -isc) forms patronymics, as, Eng-lish, Wel-sh, Ir-ish. It signifies *some-what*, *rather*, in green-ish, whit-ish, &c. ; it marks contempt and depreciation, in book-ish, outland-ish, hogg-ish.

-le, -l (O.E. -el, -ol) : britt-le (from O.E. *bryttan*, to *break*), id-le, litt-le (O.E. *lyt*, few), fick-le, gripp-le (grasping, greedy), new-fang-Ie-d (= taken up with

new things, (from O.E. *fangan*, to take), tick-le (unsteady), forget-ful = M.E. for-get-el (O.E. for-git-ol).

-en, *made of*. It originally signified *of* or *belonging to*: as, flax-en, gold-en, wood-en, &c.

There was once a very large number of adjectives in -en; as, *ashen*, *oaken*, *glassen*, &c. The extensive use that could be once made of this suffix may be seen from the following passage:—

“God him selue thaim led thair way,  
To wise and kepe bath night and day,  
With *clouden* piler on day liht,  
With *firen* piler apone the night.”—*Cursor Mundi*, G. II.

*Clouden* piler = pillar of cloud. [6195-6.

*Firen* piler = pillar of fire.

-en (participial): bound-en, molt-en, &c.

-r, -er (O.E. -or, -er, -r): bitt-er from *bite*, slipp-er-y; cp. M.E. slid-er (slippery), lith-er (bad), wak-er (watchful), flicker = flik-er (= fickle, flickering).

-er and -n are combined in east-er-n, north-er-n, south-er-n, west-er-n.

-t: brigh-t, lef-t, ligh-t, righ-t, swif-t. See -t, p. 207.

-th: fif-th, six-th, seven-th.

-y (O.E. -ig): an-y, blood-y, clay-ey, craft-y, dirt-y, &c., sill-y (O.E. *sæl-ig*).

-ow arises out of an older -u:—call-ow, fall-ow, narr-ow, yell-ow.

## 238. II. Suffixes from Predicative Roots.

### (1) NOUNS.

-craft (O.E. *cræft*): priest-craft, witch-craft, wood-craft.

-kind (O.E. -cyn) = *kin*: man-kin-d, woman-kin-d.

In E.E. and M.E. we find *fowl-kin*, *worm-kin*, &c. In M.E. *kin*, instead of being used after the noun, was put between the *numeral* and *noun*; hence it is mostly found in the genitive case.

“*Monies cunnes ufel.*”

= Evil of *many a kind*.

“*For nones kunnes mede.*”

= For meed of *no kind*.

“*Alles kinnes bokes.*”

= Books of *every kind*.

In M.E. we find *alskyns*, *noskyns*, *no skynnes*, *nakin*, *what-kin*. These (Northern) forms are perhaps due to Scandinavian influence. Cp. Dan. *alskins*, “of every sort.”

The phrase *no kin* became also *no kind of*, and *no manner*, *no manner of*, &c. Cp. the following from the *Cursor Mundi*:—

“Of *nankines* worm þat euer is made.”—G. l. 1961.

“O *nakin* worm þat es made.”—G. l. 1961.

“Of *no maner* worm þat is made.”—T. l. 1961.

**-dom** = *doom* (O.E. *dôm*, Ger. *thum*): *thral-dom*, *wis-dom*, *cristen-dom*, *hali-dom* (and *halidame* = O.E. *hâlig-dom*; E.E. *halidom*, sanctuary, relic); *king-dom* (from O.E. *cyne*, royal).

In E.E. *kine* is a very common prefix, *kine-zerde* = royal-rod, sceptre, *kine-helm* = crown, *kine-riche* = realm, *kine-settle* = royal settle, throne.

**-fare** (O.E. *faru*, way; *faran*, to go), way, course · thorough-fare, wel-fare, chaf-fer (= chap-fare from *cheap*).

**-head, -hood** (O.E. *hâd*, state, rank, person; M.E. *-hed*, *-hod*; Ger. *-heit*).

**God-head**, **man-hood** (M.E. *man-hede*, *man-hode*); **live-li-hood** once signified liveliness; but it now represents the O.E. *liflade*; E.E. *lif-lode*; M.E. *live-lode* (life-leading), sustenance.

**-herd** (O.E. *hyrde*, pastor, keeper, herdsman):



shep-herd, swine-herd. Cp. goose-herd (Holins-hed), hog-herd (Harrison).

-lock, -ledge (O.E. *lâc*, gift, sport), wed-lock, know-ledge (M.E. know-*lesche*, know-*lache*, know-*lage*).

O.E. bryd-*lac* = marriage, reaf-*lac*, bereaving, spoil. The Icelandic -*leikr* (= O.E. -*lac*) is very common under the forms -*leic* or -*laik* in E.E., and M.E.; god-*leic* = goodness, hende-*leik*, hende-*laik* = politeness, from *hende* (= O.E. *gehende*, at hand, ready, polite).

-man often does duty for the O.E. -*ere*. Cp. ship-man, chap-man, dust-man, bell-man, work-man (O.E. *wyrht-a*).

M.E. *fishere* = fish-er-man. Cp. speaker and spoke-s-man (= M.E. *speke-man*). The *s* is an intruder in *craft-s-man*, *hunt-s-man*, *herd-s-man*. Wife sometimes takes the place of -*ster*. Cp. *brew-wif* (in *Piers Plowman*) for *brewestere*; *fish-wife* = fish-woman; *mid-wife*; *huzzy* = house-wife; *goody* = good-wife.

-lock, -lick (O.E. -*leac*, -*lic*, plant): gar-lick (spear plant): hem-lock, bar-ley (O.E. *ber-lic*, from *bere* barley).

-red (O.E. *rêden* = mode, fashion, condition; Ger. -*rath*): hat-red, kin-d-red.

-rick (O.E. *rice*, power, dominion): bishop-rick. Cp. M.E. *hevene-riche*, king-*riche* (= E.E. *kinē-riche*), realm.

-ship, -skip, -scape (O.E. *scipe*, Icel. -*skapr* = form, *shape*): friend-ship, lord-ship, wor-ship (= *worth-ship*); land-scape (land-skip) is a modern formation.

Fairfax, in his *Bulk and Selvage of the World*, coins *steamscope* for *atmosphere*.



-stead (O.E. *stede*, place, *stead*; from *stand*), bed-stead; sun-stead = sol-stice.

-tree (O.E. *treow*, tree, wood), axle-tree; M.E. *dore-tre* (door-post), *rode-tre* (rood-tree, cross).

-wright (O.E. *wyrhta*, E.E. *wrihte*, a workman: from *work* cp. *wrought*), ship-wright, wheel-wright.

In E.E. we find *psalm-wurhte*, *psalm-wrihte* = psalm-wright, or the O.E. *psalm-scop* = psalm-shaper, psalmist. Becon uses *psalm-o-graph* for psalmist!

E.E. *bred-wrigte* = bread-wright = baker.

-ward (O.E. *weard*, warder, keeper), ape-ward, bear-ward, hay-ward.

## (2) ADJECTIVES.

-fast (O.E. *-fæst*, firm, *fast*): sted-fast, shame-faced (= shame-fast, modest): root-fast.

-fold (O.E. *-feald*): two-fold, mani-fold.

-ful (O.E. *-ful*): aw-ful, bale-ful, hate-ful, need-ful.

-less (O.E. *-leās* = loose): fear-less, god-less.

-ly, -like (O.E. *-lic*; *lic*, Ger. *leich*, body): god-ly, like-ly, man-ly, dove-like, war-like. See § 225, p. 190.

"'Tis as *manlike* to bear extremities as *godlike* to forgive."  
FORD.

-right (O.E. *-riht*): up-right, down-right.

In M.E. *upright* = supine; *downright* = perpendicular.

-some (O.E. *-sum*, Ger. *-sam*) is another form of *sarne*: dark-some, hard-some, irk-some: buxom

= *bugh-som* = bending-some, pliant, obedient, from bow (O.E. *bugan* to bend): *lissom* = *lithe-some*.

-teen, ty = ten. See numerals § 118, p. 98.

-ward (O.E. *-weard*, becoming, leading to. Cp. O.E. *weorth-an*, to become, Lat. *versus*, from *vertere*, to turn): back-ward, for-ward, fro-ward, to-ward, unto-ward.

-wise (O.E. *wis*, way, mode): right-eous (O.E. *riht-wis* = right-wise. Cp. M.E. *tale-wise* = tell-tale, tale-bearing.

“ For Godd es ever on *right-wis* side,  
Werrand [warring] again *wrang-wis* pride.”

C. Mundi, G. ll. 7547, 7548.

-worth (O.E. *-weorth*, E.E. *-wurthe*): stal-worth, dear-worth (precious).

In E.E. we find *luue-wurthe* (love-worthy), *kine-wurthe* (royal).

#### 239. IV. Adverbial Suffixes.

The demonstrative suffixes -s, -m, -nce, have already been treated of under adverbs, §§ 224, 226, pp. 187, 188, 191.

The following are of predicative origin:—

-ly (O.E. *-lice*): bad-ly, on-ly, lone-ly (= *al-one-ly*), utter-ly, willing-ly. See -ly, p. 212.

-ling, -long (O.E. *-lunga*, *-linga*): head-long, flat-ling, dark-ling, side-ling, side-long.

In M.E. we find the genitive form -lynges (linges) in *grof-lynges* = groveling (prone), *hedlinges* = headlong.

“ I'll run headlongs by and by.”

WEBSTER, *Northward Ho*.

“ Hurlet (hurl'd) hym down *hedlynges*.”

*The Gest Hystoriale*, l. 7485.

*Nose-linges*, *naselynge*, *noslyngys* (supine, with the nose upward), *handlinges* (hard to hand).

-meal (O.E. *-mælum*, from *mæl*, division, *meal*): limb-meal, piece-meal, flock-meal.

-ward, -wards: hither-ward, down-wards, upwards. See p. 213.

-wise (see p. 213): other-wise, no-wise, like-wise.

In M.E. we find "in other wise," "in no wise," "in like wise," "in the same wise," "in what wise."

-way, -ways: al-way, al-ways, straight-way, straight-ways.

-Gate or gates = *gait*, way, is a suffix in M.E.

Thus *-gate*, other *-gates*, *so-gate*.

## 240. V. Verbal Suffixes.

-k (frequentative or intensitive): har-k (from *hear*), tal-k (from *tell*), stal-k (from *steal*).

-l, -le (frequentative): dibb-le (from *dip*), dribb-le (from *drip*), dazz-le (from *daze*), grapp-le (from *grasp*), dwind-le (from *dwine*), knee-l, spark-le, start-le.

-n (causative): hast-en, strength-en, fatt-en, short-en, &c.

This suffix had once a reflexive or passive signification. Cp. *learn* from M.E. *leren*.

-r (frequentative or intensitive): ling-er, (O.E. *leng-an*, to delay), flitt-er, glitt-er, glimm-er, welt-er.

Stagger = M.E. *stakeren*. For change of consonant before the suffix, cp. dribb-le from *drip*, &c.

-s: ble-ss (O.E. *blêt-s-i-an*, from *blot*, sacrifice), clean-se, tru-s-t, cla-s-p (from *clap*), gra-s-p, (from *grap*), li-s-p (from *lip*).

*Rinse* = Fr. *rincer* (= *rins-er*, from a root found in Goth. *hrain-jan*, to cleanse; *hrains*, pure, clean. Ger. *rein*, pure.)

## 241. COMPOSITION.

Two or more words joined together to make a single term, expressing a new notion, are called **Compounds**: as, *black-bird, rail-road, rain-bow, &c.*

The accent distinguishes a compound word from the mere collocation of two terms, as *blackbird* and *black bird*. The hyphen is used to denote a compound, as, *passer-by, man-of-war, coast-line, &c.*

Notice the shortening of the long vowel in compounds, as, *breakfast, shepherd; vineyard* (= M.E. *wyn-yard*).

Compound words form **nouns, adjectives, verbs, and adverbs.**

## I. Noun-Compounds.

## 1. Noun and noun:—

*Noontide, churchyard, oaktree, doomsday, kinsman, herdsman, man-killer, &c.*

There are many similar old compounds whose elements are so fused together that we do not recognize them at first sight.

Bridal = bride-ale

Bandog = band-dog, Holinshed has *band-dog* or *tie-dog*.

Gospel = *god-spell* = good-word.

Nostril = *nose-thrill* = nose-hole (O.E. *thyrel* = hole).

Orchard = *wort-* (herb) *yard* (garden); O.E. *ort-geard*.

Nightingale = night-singer (O.E. *nihtë-gale*).

Hand-y-work = O.E. *hand-geweorc*, hand work.<sup>1</sup>

Cp. everywhere = E.E. *ever-ihwer* = O.E. *æfre + gehwær*.

## 2. Substantive and adjective:—

*Alderman, freeman, blackbird, midnight, upperhand,*

<sup>1</sup> For a longer list, see "Historical Outlines," p. 222.

(M.E. *over-hand*), *fore-thought*; *neighbour* = O.E. *neāh-bur* = nigh dweller; *twilight*, *fortnight*, &c.

3. Substantive and pronoun :—

*Self-will*, *self-esteem*, *self-sacrifice*.

(4) Substantive and verb :—

*Bakehouse*, *pickpocket*, *telltale*, *spendthrift*, *godsend* *windfall*.

## II. Adjective-Compounds.

1. Substantive and Adjective :—

*Blood-red*, *snow-white*, *sea-sick*, *heart-sick*, *fire-proof*, *praise-worthy*.

2. Adjective and substantive :—

*Bare-foot*, *bare-foot-ed*. Cp. O.E. *clæn-heort* = *having a clean heart*; *ân-eage* = *one-eye-d*, *four-footed*, &c.

3. Adjective and adjective :—

*Fool-hardy* (*fool* = foolish). Cp. *mad-hardy*, *blue-green*, *rathe-ripe*.

4. Participial combinations :—

(a) Noun and pres. part. : *earth-shaking*, *heart-rending*, *match-making*.

(b) Adjective and pres. part. : *ill-looking*, *time-serving*.

(c) Noun and pass. part. : *earth-born*, *chap-fallen*, *heart-broken*, *thunder-struck*.

(d) Adjective and pass. part. : *new-made*, *well-bred*, *dead-drunk*, &c.



### III. Verb-Compounds.

1. Noun and verb: *backbite, hoodwink, henpeck, waylay.*

2. Adjective and verb: *dry-nurse, white-wash.*

3. Verb and adverb: *doff* = do off, *don* = do on.  
Cp. *cross-question.*

For compound adverbs, see § 228, p. 193, 194.

### 242. COMPOSITION WITH PARTICLES OF ENGLISH ORIGIN.

#### I. Inseparable Particles.

a- (O.E. *on*, E.E. *an*) on: a-back, a-bed, a-board, a-foot, a-sleep, a-loof, a-skew, a-loud, a-b-aft, a-b-out, a-midst, a-mong, a-thwart, a-fishing, a-hunting, &c.

1. The original form *an* occurs in *an-on* (*in one moment*), *an-ent* (see p. 188), *a-c-knowledge* (O.E. *oncncðwan*), *an-vil* (O.E. *an-filt*).

2. A- (O.E. *of*, off, from): a-down = O.E. *of dāne*, from the down (hill); a-kin, a-new.

The prefix *of-* had an intensitive meaning, like our *over* and Latin *per*. Cp. M.E. *of-take* = overtake; M.E. *of-se* = perceive.

*Of* (intensive), exists in a-thirst = O.E. *of-thirst*; an-hungered = a-hungered, from O.E. *of -hyngrian*, to feel very hungry. (See *Piers Plowman*, B. x. 59, p. 146, and C. xii. 43, p. 198).

3. A- (O.E. *ð-*, Goth. *us-* = out of, from), a-rise, a-rouse, a-f-frighted, a-wake, a-light; a-go = passed by.

"All this world schal a-go."

*O.E. Misc.* p. 160.



We have a prefix *a-* in *a-ghast*, *a-shamed*, *a-feard*, *a-ffrighted*, but it is difficult to say whether its original meaning was *out of* (O.E. *a-* = Goth. *us-*), or *from* (O.E. *of*).

4. *A-* (O.E. *and-* Ger. *ent-*, back). *A-long* (O.E. *and-lang*, M.E. *ende-long*, E.E. *an-long*, M.E. *on-long*). *An-swer* (O.E. *and-swarian*), *en-lighten* (O.E. *onlyhtan*).

*A-bide* (O.E. *an-bīdan*, *on-bīdan*, *and-bīdan*).

*A-gain*, *a-against* (O.E. *on-gean*, Ger. *ent-gegen*).

Cp. *e-lope* (Du. *ont-loopen*, Ger. *ent-laufen*).

5. *A-* (O.E. *ge-*), *a-ware* (O.E. *ge-wær*, M.E. *i-war*), *a-like* (O.E. *ge-līc*, ME. *i-lich*, *e-liche*, *a-liche*, *o-like*).

*A-long* (*of*), (O.E. *ge-lang*, E.E. *i-lang*, M.E. *a-lang*).

*A-mong* (O.E. *ge-mang*, *on-ge-mang*, E.E. *i-mong*, M.E. *o-mang*, *a-mong*).

*A-nough* occurs in Milton's *Areopagitica*, for *e-nough* (O.E. *ge-noh*, M.E. *enough*, *anough*). *A-readiness* {in the Authorised Version of the Scriptures), is from M.E. *a-redi*, E.E. *i-readi*, *i-redi*, O.E. *ge-rād*.

*A-f-ford* (O.E. *ge-forthian*, E.E. *i-forthien*, M.E. *a-forthien*, from *forth*).

6. *A-* (O.E. *ā* ever) : *a-ught*, *e-i-ther*.

*at-* (O.E. *æt-*) : *at-one*, *at-onement*, *t-wit* (O.E. *æt-wītan*, to reproach).

The preposition *at* is used as a sign of the infinitive in M.E. *At do* has become corrupted into *a-do* ; we find also *to-do* (= *a-do*) used as a substantive.

“Ware we neuer wont *a* stele.”

*Cursor Mundi*, T. l. 4910.

“For ware we neuer wont *at* stele.”—*Ib.* C.

*be-* (O.E. *be-*, *bi-* = *by*). See *Adverbs*, p. 188.

(1) It renders intransitive verbs transitive, as *be-queath*, *be-speak*, *be-think*.

(2) It is intensitive in *be-daub*, *be-smear*, &c. We find this use of the prefix very common in M.E., as *be-bleed*, *be-drive*, *be-bark*, &c.

(3) With substantives it forms verbs, *be-friend*, *be-troth*, and a few others of recent origin.

(4) It enters into the composition of *nouns*, as *be-half*, *be-hest*, *be-hoof*, *be-quest*, *by-name*, *by-path*, *by-word*, &c. ; and of *prepositions* and *adverbs*, as *be-fore*, *be-sides*, *b-ut*, &c. *Bye-law* probably contains the Scandinavian "*by*," *a town*.

*Be-head* = O.E. *heafdian*, E.E. *bi-heavedien*, *to decapitate*.

*Be-lieve* = O.E. *ge-lyfan*, M.E. *beleuen*.

*Be-reave* = O.E. *reafian*, E.E. *bireavien*.

*Be-gin* = O.E. *on-ginnan*, E.E. *bi-ginnen*.

*Be-wray* is a corruption of the O.E. *on-wreon*, *to discover* ; O.E. *be-wreon*, signified *to cover* ; the *be* is perhaps due to the M.E. *bi-traien*, *to betray*.

In *be-ware* we have the verb *be* (imper.) and the adjective *ware* (= cautious).

*for-* (O.E. *for-*). The original meaning of this prefix was *through*, *thorough*, like Lat. *per* : *for-swear* (Lat. *per-jurare*), *for-bid*, *for-bear*, *for-get*, *for-give*, *for-lorn*, *fore-go* (= *for-go*). The p. p. *fore-gone* is rare.

*For-do* occurs also in the place of the modern *do for*. Cp. Lat. *per-dere*. Spenser has *for-pined*, *for-wasted*, *for-wearied*. We sometimes find *for* joined to Romance roots, as, *for-fend* = *defend*, *forbid* ; *for-barred*, *barred up*, *debarred*.

From the sense of *overmuch* comes that of *amiss*, *badly*, in *fore-speak*, *fore-spent*.

*fore-* (O.E. *fore*, Lat. *præ*, before) : *fore-bode*, *fore-cast*, *fore-tell*, *fore-said*, *fore-father*, *fore-noon*, *fore-sight*, *fore-head*.

*fore-gone*, the p. p. of *fore-go* (rarely used), *to go before*, must be distinguished from *fore-go* (= *for-go*), and *fore-gone* (= *for-gone*).

gain- (O.E. *gegn*, *gean*) = against. Cp. *a-gain*.  
Gain-say, gain-stand, gain-strive, gain-giving.

Cp. M.E. *gein*-come = return; *gain*-sawe = contradiction; *again* was once used as a prefix. Cp. M.E. *ayen*-bite = remorse, *ayen*-byggen = redeem, *ayen*-wizte = counterpoise.

i-, y- (O.E. *ge-*, M.E. *i-*). This prefix was once a sign of the pass. part., as, y-clept, y-chained (Milton). It is wrongly used in y-pointing (Milton, *On Shakespeare*). It enters into the composition of i-wis (O.E. *ge-wis*, truly, certainly), ever-y-where, hand-y-work.

mis- (O.E. *mis-*), wrong, ill. Cp. a-mis (= on the wrong, M.E. *misse* wrong, injury): mis-behave, mis-deed, mis-lead, mis-trust, mis-take; mis-like, (in Shakespeare) has become dis-like.

For mis- in *mischief*, see p. 243.

nether-, (O.E. *ni-ther*) = down, below: nether-stocks, nether-lands.

sand- (O.E. *sâm*, half): sand-blind = half-blind.

"Wrinkled, *sand-blind*, toothless, and deformed."—BURTON, *Anatomy of Melancholy*, ed. 1845, p. 70.

Cp. O.E. *sâm*-cwic = half-alive; M.E. *sam*-hale = half-whole, lame (*Cursor Mundi*, l. 5153); "chiries *sam*-rede" = half-ripe (*Piers Plowman*, C. Text, ix. 311, p. 155).

to- (O.E. *to-*). This is an adverbial form of *two* (cp. Lat. *dis-*) signifying *asunder*, *in pieces*: O.E. *to-brecan* = to break to pieces, *to-dælan* = to divide; E.E. *to-don*, to do asunder; *to-fleon*, to fly asunder; M.E. *to-pullen*, to pull to pieces, &c.

It sometimes has an intensitive force, and is strengthened by the adverb all (quite).

"And all *to-* brake his skull."

*Judges* ix. 5, 3.

"Al is *to-* broken thilke regioun."

CHAUCER, *Knights Tale*, l. 2759.

*Go to* (used as an interjection in *Hamlet* i. 3) seems to correspond to *to-go* = O.E. *to-gân*, *to go away, depart*; cp. *fer-do* and *do-for*.

For the phrase "*all to*," see **all**, § 243.

**to-** is the ordinary preposition "to" in **to-day**, **to-night**, **to-morrow**, **to-gether**, **here-to-fore**, **to-ward**.

**un-** (O.E. *on-*, Goth. *and-*, Ger. *ent-*) = back (with verbs): **un-bind**, **un-do**, **un-fold**, **un-lock**, **un-wind**.

**un-** (O.E. *un-*) = not (with adjectives, and nouns formed from adjectives): **un-true**, **un-wise**, **un-told**, **un-just**, **un-truth**.

**wan-** (O.E. *wan-*) **wan-ing**, **want-ing**: **wan-hope** = despair; **wan-ton** = *wan-towen*, untrained, wild; *-towen* is the O.E. *togen*, p.p. of the O.E. verb *te-on*, lead, draw. Cp. Ger. *un-ge-zogen*.

**with-** (O.E. *with-*, a shortened form of *wi-ther*), against, back: **with-draw**, **with-hold**, **with-stand**.

## 243. II. Separable Particles.

**After** (O.E. *æfter*): **after-growth**, **after-math**, **after-clap**, **after-dinner**, **after-ward**.

**All** (O.E. *eal*): **al-mighty**, **al-one**, **l-one**, **l-onely**, **l-onesome**, **al-to-gether**, **al-most**, **al-though**, **al-so**, **a-s**.

**All**, meaning *quite*, is very often joined to the adverb **to** (too), and was made to precede the prefix **to-** in composition. (See **to-** p. 220).

"*All to dirtied*."—LATIMER.

"*All to ruffled*."—MILTON.

M.E. "*Al to longe*."

*Life of Beket*, 774.

E.E. "*Al to wel*."

*Isidiana*, p. 50.

**Forth** (O.E. *forth*): forth-coming, forth-going for-ward (O.E. *forth-weard*).

"From that day *forthward* man most nedes deie."—*Trevisa*.

Cp. E.E. *forth-fare* = departure, *forth-gong* = progress, &c.

**Fro**, from (O.E. *fram*, O.N. *fra*): fro-ward, from-ward.

**In** (O.E. *in*): in-come, in-land, in-sight, in-born, in-bred, in-wardly, in-ly, in-lay, in-fold, in-to.

In many verbs in has been replaced by a Romance form (en-, em-): en-dear, em-bitter.

**Of** (O.E. *of* = from, *off*): of-fal, off-set, off-shoot, off-spring. See a-, pp. 217-8.

In M.E. we find *of-schreden*, shred off; *of-smiten*, smite off; E.E. *of-springen*, to spring from.

**On** (O.E. *on*, upon, forward): on-set, on-slaught, on-ward.

**Out**, ut (O.E. *ût*): out-come, out-let, out-break, out-pour, out-cast, out-joint, out-law, out-landish, out-side, out-ward, ut-ter. It sometimes signifies *beyond*, *over*, as in out-bid, out-do.

**Over** (O.E. *ofer*): above, beyond, exceedingly, too :—

(1) With nouns and adjectives: over-eating, over-flow, over-plus (E.E. *over-eke*), over-joy, over-big, over-much.

(2) With verbs: over-flow, over-hang, over-run, over-take, over-work, over-whelm, over-hear, over-look.

**Over** (O.E. *ufe-ra*, E.E. *uwe-re*, superior; cp. a-b-ove): over-coat, over-man; M.E. over-lippe = upper-lip; ofer-hand = upper-hand.

**Through**, thorough (O.E. *thurh*, E.E. *thuruh*):



thorough-fare (M.E. *thurgh-fare*), through-out, thorough-bred, through-train.

Cp. E.E. *thurgh-feren* (to go through), *thurh-driven*, *thurh-seken*, *thurh-wunian* (to remain); M.E. *thorow-bore* (bore through), *thorow-ride*, &c.

Under (O.E. *under*): under-go, under-stand, under-lay, under-mine, under-let, under-sell; under-growth, under-ling, under-wood, under-hand, under-neath.

Up (O.E. *up*): up-bear, up-braid, up-hold, up-heave, up-lifted, up-land, up-shot, up-right, up-start, up-ward, up-on.

#### 244. SUFFIXES OF ROMANIC ORIGIN.

Under the head of Romanic suffixes we must distinguish (1) those Latin suffixes that have a Norman French form; (2) those suffixes that are unchanged, being borrowed directly from the Latin language; (3) modern French and other Romance endings of Latin origin.

Voy-age comes through N. French; its Latin form is *vi-aticum*. Cp. *beni-son* with *benedic-tion*, *charn-el* and *carn-al*, &c.

Liqu-our has a N. French form; liqu-eur comes to us from modern French; cp. *antic* (N.Fr.), *antique* Fr. *Cavalc-ade*, *escap-ade*, are Italian words that have come to us through the French. The true French forms are *chevauch-ée* and *échapp-ée*; other forms in -ade (originally -ado), come to us directly from the Spanish language, as *crus-ade*, *brav-ado*, *torn-ado*, &c.; cp. *prem-ier* (Fr.), *prim-ary* (Lat.), *prim-er*



(N.Fr.) Many suffixes of Norman French origin have now no living power, not being used to form new derivatives.

## I. Noun Suffixes.

**-age** (Lat. *-aticum*), forms abstract nouns: *advantage*, *beverage*, *courage*, *homage*.

It sometimes denotes the place where, as in *hermitage*, *parsonage*.

*Tillage* and *cottage* are hybrids.

**-ain, -an, -en, -on** (Lat. *-anus*): *chaplain*, *chieftain*, *villain*, *pelican*, *peasant*, *warden* (= *guardian*), *sexton* (= *sacristan*), *surgeon*, *sovereign*.

Modern formations, having no corresponding Latin form in *-anus*, are *antiquarian*, *barbarian*, *civilian*, *grammarian*, *librarian*, &c.

From modern French come *artisan*, *courtesan*, *partisan*.

**-ain** (Lat. *-aneus*), appears in *mountain*, *campaign*, *champaign*.

**-al, -el** (Lat. *-alis*): *canal*, *cardinal*, *cathedral*, *coronal*, *spittal*, *channel*, *cattle*, *chatel*, *fuel*, *jewel*, &c.

Lat. *-alia* (pl.) appears in *battle*, *entrail*, *marvel*, *rascal*, *spousals*, *victuals*.

**-ant, -ent** (Lat. *-antem, -entem*) are participial suffixes, sometimes marking the agent:—

*Covenant*, *giant*, *merchant*, *sergeant*, *brigand*, *diamond*, *innocent*, *student*.

**-ance, -ence** (Lat. *-antia*), form abstract nouns:—

*Abundance*, *allegiance*, *chance* (= *cadence*), *purveyance* (= *providence*), *obedience* (obedi-*ence*), *prudence*, *science*, &c.

**-ancy, -ency**, are new formations from the Latin *-antia, -entia*, becoming (1) *-antie, -entie*, (2) *-ancie, -encie*, &c., *brilli-ancy, excell-ency*, &c.

*sé-ance* is from modern French.

**-and, -end** (Lat. *-andus, -endus*), are gerundial suffixes :—

(1) *Garl-and, vi-and, leg-end, prov-end-er*.

(2) *Memor-andum* retains its Latin form ; (3) *preb-end, reprim-and*, are directly from Modern French.

**-ar, -er, -or** (Lat. *-arium*), marks the place where ; it enters into the name of some common objects :—

(1) *Cell-ar, mort-ar, chart-er, dow-er, sampl-er, garn-er, lard-er, sauc-er, man-or*.

(2) **-ary** (Lat. *-arium*), *gran-ary, (= garn-er), avi-ary, semin-ary, viv-ary*.

In M.E. we find O.Fr. *-aire* in *sal-arie, seyntu-arie* (sanctuary), *lettu-arie* = electuary.

(1) **-ar, -er, -or** (Lat. *-arius*), marks the agent : *calend-ar, vic-ar, arch-er, butch-er, butl-er, carpent-er, farri-er, messeng-er, treasur-er, bachel-or, cancell-or, coun-sell-or*.

(2) **-ary** (Lat. *-arius*) : *advers-ary, secret-ary, &c.*

*Commiss-arie* = commissary, *not-arie* = not-ary, are met with in M.E. and the suffix is owing to the O.Fr. *-aire*, not *-arie*. See *-ry*, p. 230.

**-ard** (Low Lat. *-ardus*, Ger. *-hart*, Eng. *hard*) : *cow-ard, dull-ard, nigg-ard, buzz-ard, tank-ard, &c.*

*Bragg-ar-t, dastar-d, lollar-d* (cp. *schol-ard* for *schol-ar*), must be excluded from this list.

*Sweet-heart* has perhaps replaced an original *sweet-ard*. (Cp. Ger. *lieb-hart*).

**-ate** (N. Fr. *-at*, Lat. *-atus*, pass. part.): *cur-ate*, *leg-ate*, *reneg-ate*.

Most nouns in *-ate* are of recent origin; *-ade* is the Spanish form of *-ate*. Cp. *reneg-ade* = *reneg-ate*. *Advocate* has replaced M.E. *avocat*, Fr. *avocat*.

**-ee** (Fr. *-ée*, Lat. *-atus*, suffix of pass. part.), marks the agent in a passive sense.

*Appell-ee*, *legat-ee*, *trust-ee*, &c., are from Modern French.

**-eer, -ier** (Fr. *-er, -ier*; Lat. *-arius*): *engin-eer*, *mountain-eer*, *harpoon-er*, *brigad-ier*, *prem-ier*, *chandel-ier*, are from Modern French. See *-ar, -er*, p. 225, for the N. French form.

**-el** (Lat. *-ela*): *cant-el*, *cand-le*, *quarr-el*, *tut-el-age*.

**-el** (Lat. *-ellus, -ellum*): *bush-el*, *bow-el*, *chanc-el*, *mors-el*, *cast-le*, *mant-le*, *pann-el*, *pomm-el*.

**-en, -in** (Lat. *-enus, -ena, -enum*): *ali-en*, *warr-en*, *flor-in*, *cha-in*, *verm-in*, *ven-om*.

**-er** (Lat. *-eria*): *gart-er*, *gutt-er*, *matt-er*, *pray-er*.

*Barrier* is the Modern-French *barr-ière*. See *-ry*, p. 230.

**-erel, -rel**, has a diminutive force: *cock-erel*, *dott-erel*, *mack-erel*, *pick-rel*, *pick-erel*; T.E. *daint-rel* = a *dain-ty*.

**-ern** (Lat. *-erna*): *cav-ern*, *cist-ern*, *tav-ern* (cp. *tab-ern-acle*).

**-et, -ot** (N. Fr. *-et, -ot*; Fr. *-et, -ette; -at, -ot*), is a diminutive suffix.

*Blank-et*, *cygn-et*, *hatch-et*, *pock-et*, *tick-et*, *chari-et*, *fagg-et*, *parr-et*.

**-et, -ot, -ette** (see above): *ball-et*, *ball-et*, *bill-et*, *paroqu-et*, *ettiqu-et*, *coqu-et*, from Modern French.

To the original *-et* has been prefixed *l* (for *el*),

making a new diminutive suffix, **-let** in *ham-let*, *stream-let*, &c. See **-el**, p. 226.

**-ess** (Lat. *-issa*), sign of the feminine gender. See p. 66, § 85.

**ess, -ice, -ise** (Lat. *-itia*): *distr-ess*, *larg-ess*, *lach-ess*, *rich-es*, *prow-ess*, *franch-ise*, *merchand-ise*, *avar-ice*, *coward-ice*, *just-ice*; M.E. *covet-eise* has become *covetous-ness*.

*Serv-ice* = Lat. *serv-itium*; *burg-ess* = O.F. *burgeis*, *court-eous* (= M.E. *curt-eis*), and *marq-uis* contain Latin *-ensis*.

**-ice, -ise** (Lat. *-icem*): *matr-ice*, *pum-ice*, *pent-house* (= *pent-ise*), *jud-ge*, *partrid-ge*, *paun-ch*.

**-ice** (Lat. *-icius*): *apprent-ice*, *nov-ice*, *surpl-ice*, *pil-ch* (= *pel-isse*).

**-ic, -c** (Lat. *-icus, -ica*, Gr. *ικός*): *log-ic*, *mus-ic*, *phys-ic*, *heret-ic*, *clerk* (= *cler-ic*), *por-ch*, *per-ch*, *ser-ge*, *for-ge* (= *fabr-ic*).

**-icle** (Lat. *-iculus*): *art-icle*, *part-icle*.

*Icicle* = O.E. *īs-gic-el* = *ice-jag*. Cp. *Iseyokels* in footnote to *Piers Plowman*, B. xvii. 227, p. 315.

**-iff** (Lat. *-ivus*): *bail-iff*, *cait-iff* (= *cap-tive*), *plaint-iff*. See **-ive**, p. 234.

**-ine, -in** (Lat. *-inus*): *div-ine*, *fam-ine*, *medic-ine*, *bas-in*, *citr-in*, *cous-in*, *gobl-in*, *pilgr-im* (= *pere-gr-ine*), *rav-ine*.

Latin atonic *-ina* disappeared in Old French, hence English *dame, page*; Modern French has reintroduced it under the form, *-ine*, whence our *machine*.

**in** (Lat. *-inem*): *marg-in*, *orig-in*, *virg-in*.

**-ism** (Lat. *-ismus*; Gr. *-ισμος*): *de-ism*, *fatal-ism*, *ego-t-ism*. Many are direct from the Greek, as *bar-bar-ism*, *lacon-ism*.

No words of N.Fr. origin end in *-ism*. Cp. M.E. *sophime* = *sophism*.

**-ist** (Lat. *-ista*, Gr. *-τής*): bapt-*ist*, evangel-*ist*, chor-*ist*-er; M.E. soph-*ist*-er = soph-*ist*.

More recent forms are dent-*ist*, de-*ist*, exorc-*ist*, flor-*ist*, medall-*ist*, novel-*ist*, and numerous others.

**-ite** (Lat. *-ita*, Fr. *-ite*) forms patronymics: Israel-*ite*, Jesu-*it*.

**-id** (Lat. *-id-*, Gr. *-ιδ-*, Fr. *-ide*): Æne-*id*, Nere-*id*. Many modern chemical words end in *-id*, as alkalo-*id*.

**-le** (Lat. *-ulus*, *-ula*, *-ulum*): fab-*le*, tab-*le*, stab-*le*, peop-*le*; with preceding *c* (which is sometimes lost), we have artic-*le*, mirac-*le*, pinnac-*le*, obstac-*le*, appar-*el*, dams-*el*, fenn-*el*, lent-*il*, parc-*el* (= partic-*le*), penc-*il*, per-*il*.

Modern forms in *-bule*, *-cle*, *-cule*, are borrowed directly from the Latin.

**-l-ence** (Lat. *-l-entia*) forms abstract nouns. There are very few of these forms in M.E. We find pesti-*lence* and vio-*lence*; other forms are quite recent. See *-lent*, p. 234.

**-lency** is sometimes found for *-lence*, like *-ency* for *-ence*.

**-let**. See *-et*, p. 226.

**-m**, **-me** (Lat. *-men*): char-*m*, real-*m*, cri-*me*, nou-*n*, re-now-*n*, leav-*en* (= Lat. *leva-men*, Fr. *lev-ain*).

**-me**, the modern French form is contained in alu-*m*, legu-*me*, volu-*me*, regi-*me*.

**-men**, the original Lat. form, is retained in all later loans, as acu-*men*, bitu-*men*, &c.

**-m**, **-me** (Lat. *-ma*, Gr. *-μα*): baptis-*m*, phanto-*m* (= phantas-*m*), the-*me*.

From modern French we have borrowed diade-*m*, anagra-*m*, emble-*m*, proble-*m*.



From the Greek we get anagram, epigra-*m*, paradig-*m*, pano-*ra-ma*, enthusias-*m*, pleonas-*m*, telegram.

**-ment** (Lat. *-mentum*): argu-*ment*, command-*ment*, enchant-*ment*, gar-*ment*, nourish-*ment*, oint-*ment*, parlia-*ment*.

It is added to Teutonic words, as, acknowledge-*ment*, atone-*ment*, bereave-*ment*, fulfil-*ment*, &c.

**-mony** (Lat. *-mon-ium*, *-mon-ia*), cere-*mony*, matri-*mony*, testi-*mony*.

**-on, -eon, -ion, -in** (Lat. *-onem*, *-ionem*), form many nouns denoting act of, state of: apr-*on*, bac-*on*, cap-*on*, falc-*on*, fel-*on*, gall-*on*, glutt-*on*, mas-*on*, mutt-*on*, sim-*plet-on*, tal-*on*, champ-*ion*, compan-*ion*, clar-*ion*, march-*ion-ess*, on-*ion*, stall-*ion*, scorp-*ion*, pant-*ion*, pig-*eon*, scutch-*eon*, sturg-*eon*, trunch-*eon*.

The N.Fr. forms of the suffix were, (1) *-un*, *iun*; (2) *-oun*, *ioun*.

**-oon** (Fr. *-on*, Ital. *-one*), ball-*oon*, bat-*oon*, drag-*oon*, harp-*oon*, sal-*oon*, buff-*oon*, poltr-*oon*, are not from N. French.

Some words in *-oon* seem to be augmentatives, as, ball-*oon*, sal-*oon*, &c.; others are diminutives, as, haberge-*on*, flag-*on*.

**-our** (Lat. *-orem*): ard-*our*, col-*our*, fav-*our*, hon-*our*, lab-*our*, lang-*our*, liqu-*our*, rum-*our*.

The Modern French form is *-eur*, as, ard-*eur*, grand-*eur*, liqu-*eur*; the N.Fr. was (1) *-ur*, (2) *-our*.

**-or, -our, -er**, (Lat. *-torem*): jur-*or*, govern-*our*, emper-*or*, antl-*er*, compil-*er*, divin-*er*, found-*er*, preach-*er*, juggl-*er*, lev-*er*.

N. Fr. *-our* has become *-er* in receiv-*er*, robb-*er*, trench-*er*.



**-tor** (Lat. *-torem*): audi-*tor*, doc-*tor*, proc-*tor*, trai-*tor*, au-*thor*, indi-*ter*.

**-our, -or, -er** (Lat. *-orium, -oria*): min-*or*, parl-*our*, raz-*or*, viz-*or*, sciss-*ors*, count-*er*, cens-*er*, lav-*er*, (= lavat-*ory*), mang-*er*, covert-*ure*.

In M.E. we find a few forms in *-orie* = *ory*. (Cp. Fr. *-oire*,) as lavat-*orie*, orat-*orie*, purgat-*orie*.

**-oir** (Fr. *-oir*, Lat. *-orium*): abatt-*oir*, from modern French.

**-ory**, the full form of Lat. *-orium*, occurs in audit-*ory*, dormit-*ory*, refect-*ory*, repert-*ory*.

**-ry, -ery** (N. Fr. *-erie*): fai-*ry*, hazard-*ry*, jew-*ry*, poet-*ry*, poult-*ry*, spice-*ry*, surg-*ery*, cook-*ery*, house-*wife-ry*, mid-*wife-ry*.

We have a large number of words with this ending unknown to Middle English: as, slave-*ry*, peasant-*ry*, thief-*ry*, witch-*ery*, trump-*ery*.

**-ry** (Lat. *-aria*): chival-*ry*, caval-*ry*, carpent-*ry*, pant-*ry*, vint-*ry*. Cp. the modern forms, chapel-*ry*, deane-*ry*, &c.

**-ry** (Lat. *-arium*): dow-*ry*, laund-*ry*, vest-*ry*, treasu-*ry*.

**-son** (Lat. *-sionem*): beni-*son*, mali-*son*, le-s-*son*, ori-*son*, pri-*son*, ran-*som*, rea-*son*, sea-*son*, trea-*son*, veni-*son*, fashi-*on*.

With these compare the parallel forms that have come into our language direct from Latin: benedic-*tion*, male-dic-*tion*, lec-*tion*, ora-*tion*, po-*tion*, redemp-*tion*, ra-*tion*, tradi-*tion*, fac-*tion*.

Many words now ending in *-tion*, as, *nation*, *salvation*, &c., once ended in *-ciun* (E.E.), *-cioun*, *-cion* (M.E.)

**-sion** (Lat. *-sionem*): conver-*sion*, man-*sion*, pen-*sion*,

pas-sion, pri-son, pro-cès-sion, vi-sion, &c. ; with foi-son (plenty), compare pro-fu-sion.

-sy (Lat. *-sia*, Gr. *-σις*) : catalep-sy, drop-sy, pal-sy, (= paraly-sis), fren-sy.

Nouns ending in *-sis* are modern words that have come direct from Greek.

-se, a still shorter form of this suffix, occurs in apocalyp-se, ba-se, eclips-se.

-t (Lat. *-tus*) : conduc-t, conven-t, frui-t, strai-t, sain-t. See y, p. 232.

-t (Lat. *-tum*) : deb-t, fea-t (= fac-t), join-t, poin-t.

-t (Lat. *-ta*) : aun-t, ren-t, &c. See y, p. 232.

-t, -te (Lat. *-ta*, Gr. *-της*) : apostate, come-t, hermi-t, plane-t, prophe-t, idio-t.

-ter (Lat. *-ter*) : mis-ter, mas-ter (= magis-ter), minis-ter, fri-ar (Lat. *fra-ter*).

-tery (Lat. *-terium*) : mas-tery, minis-tery.

-tor (Lat. *-tor*). See p. 230.

-dor in battle-dor, mata-dor, is a Spanish form.

-trix (Lat. *-trix*), a feminine suffix. See p. 67.

-ter, -tre (Lat. *-trum*, Gr. *-τρον*) : clois-ter, spec-tre, scep-tre.

The full form occurs in modern words, as, "*spectrum analysis*."

Another form of *-trum* is *-crum*, in *sepul-chre* ; *brum* in *mem-brum*. Cp. *candela-brum*, *cere-brum*.

-tude (Lat. *-tudinem*) : beati-tude, multi-tude, &c., are direct from Latin. *Cus-tom* = Lat. *consuetudinem*.

-ty (Lat. *-tatem*) : beau-ty, boun-ty, chari-ty, cruel-ty, feal-ty, (= fidelity), frail-ty, &c.

-ule. See -le, p. 228.

-ure (Lat. *-ura*) : advent-ure, apert-ure, creat-ure,

forfeit-*ure*, nat-*ure*, nurt-*ure*, meas-*ure*, past-*ure*, se-  
pult-*ure*, stat-*ure*, vest-*ure*.

Arm-*our* = M. Lat. *armatura*.

-*y* (Lat. *-ia*): cop-*y*, famil-*y*, felon-*y*, nav-*y*, stor-*y*,  
victor-*y*, &c., Ital-*y*, Arab-*y* and Arab-*ia*.

-*y* (Lat. *-ium*): horolog-*y*, jo-*y*, stud-*y*. Directly  
from the Latin are formed augur-*y*, obsequ-*y*, remed-*y*,  
&c.

-*y* (Lat. *-atus*): attorn-*ey*, deput-*y*, all-*y*.

Many words in -*cy*, -*sy*, are formed on the model of Fr.  
words in -*cie*, Lat. *-tia*:—cura-*cy*, minstrel-*cy*, &c. Cp. degene-  
ra-*cy*, intima-*cy*, &c., the corresponding adjectives of which end  
in -*ate*.

-*y* (Lat. *-tus*), cler-g-*y*: coun-t-*y*, duch-*y*, trēa-t-*y*.

-*y* (Lat. *-ta*), arm-*y*: embass-*y*, chimn-*ey*, countr-*y*,  
dela-*y*, destin-*y*, entr-*y*, journ-*ey*, jur-*y*, part-*y*, vall-*ey*.  
See -*ee*, p. 226.

-*y* (Lat. *-ies*): progen-*y*.

## II. Adjective Suffixes.

-*al* (Lat. *-alis*), annu-*al*, besti-*al*, casu-*al*, equ-*al*,  
loy-*al* (= leg-*al*), roy-*al* (= reg-*al*), &c. See p. 224.

-*al* forms many new derivatives, as, festiv-*al*, celesti-*al*, comic  
-*al*, mathematic-*al*.

-*an*, -*ain* (Lat. *-anus*): cert-*ain*, germ-*an*, germ-*ain*,  
hum-*an*, me-*an*.

There are numerous adjectives in -*an*, of recent  
formation that have no corresponding Latin form in  
-*anus*: agrari-*an*, barbari-*an*, diluvi-*an*, pedestri-*an*.  
See *an*, p. 224.

-*ane* (Lat. *-anus*): hum-*ane*, transmont-*ane* are  
modern forms.

**-ant, -ent**: *err-ant*, *ramp-ant*, *trench-ant*, *obedi-ent*, *pati-ent*, &c. See **-ant, -ent**, p. 224.

**-ar** (Lat. *-aris*): *famili-ar*, *regul-ar*, *singul-ar*.

**-ary** (Lat. *-arius*): *contr-ary*, *necess-ary*, *second-ary*. See **-ar**, p. 225.

*Arbitr-ary*, *disciplin-ary*, *honor-ary*, and many English derivatives in **-ary**, having no Latin form in *-arius*.

The Lat. *-arius* is sometimes changed into *-arious*, as, *nef-arious*, *greg-ari-ous*. Sometimes *-an* is added to *-ari*, as, *agr-ari-an*, *antiqu-ari-an*, &c.

**-atic** (Lat. *-aticus*): *fan-atic*, *lun-atic*.

Most nouns in **-atic, -tic**, come directly from the Latin, as *aqu-atic*, *rus-tic*, *domes-tic*, &c. See **-age**, p. 224.

**-ate** (Lat. *-atus*): *delic-ate*, *desol-ate*, *determin-ate*, and some few other words in **-ate** are found in M.E. coming directly from the Latin. But most words with this ending are modern formations.

Had these words come from N. Fr. they would end in **-y**. Compare *privy*, *secret*, (Fr. *privé*), with *private*.

**-ble, -able** (Lat. *-bilis*): *accept-able*, *abomin-able*, *fee-ble*, *foi-ble* (= *fle-bilis*), *mov-able*, *sta-ble*.

The suffix **-able** is added to many Romance stems: as, *agree-able*, *change-able*, *favour-able*, *deceiv-able*, &c.

It is also added to Teutonic stems: as, *break-able*, *eat-able*, *laugh-able*, *sale-able*.

Terms in **-ible**, as *aud-ible*, *vis-ible*, are formed directly from the Latin.

**-ble** (Lat. *-plex*): *dou-ble* (= *du-ple*), *tre-ble* (= *tri-ple*).

**-ese** (Ital. *-ese*, Lat. *-ensis*): *Chin-ese*, *Malt-ese*. See p. 227.

-esque (Fr. *-esque*, Lat. *-iscus*): burl-*esque*, grot-*esque*, pictur-*esque*; *morrice* (dance) = *mor-esco* i.e. Moorish. This *-esque* is allied to English *-ish*, hence the forms *Fren-ch* and *Dan-ish*, in which the Fr. suffix is anglicised.

-ac (Lat. *-acus*): demoni-*ac*, mani-*ac*.

-ic (Lat. *-icus*, *-ica*, *-icum*): aromat-*ic*, barbar-*ic*, frant-*ic*, schismat-*ic*. See p. 227.

It is often combined with *-al*, as cler-*ic-al*, mag-*ic-al*, mus-*ic-al*, &c.

In Old French *icus* became *i*, whence our *enem-y* = Fr. *ennemi*, Lat. *inimicus*; Fr. *p-ic* = *p-ica*; *-ique* is the modern Fr. form. Cp. ant-*ic* (old form), with ant-*ique* (modern derivative).

-id (Lat. *-idus*): ac-*id*, pall-*id*, tep-*id*, rig-*id*, &c.

In N.Fr. this *-id* disappears or is changed. Cp. Eng. *neat*, Fr. *net*, Lat. *nit-idus*. In modern learned Fr. words *-ide* is used as rig-*ide*, sap-*ide*, &c.

-ile (Lat. *-ilis*): frag-*ile*, ster-*ile*, &c.

-l, -le (Lat. *-e-lis*, *-i-lis*): cru-*e-l*, civ-*i-l*, frai-*l* (= frag-*i-le*), ab-*le*, subt-*le*, gent-*le*.

-ine (Lat. *-inus*): div-*ine*, citr-*in*.

Most of the words in *-ine* are of modern formation: as, aquil-*ine*, can-*ine*, genu-*ine*, infant-*ine*, &c.

-ive (Lat. *-ivus*): able to, inclined to, act-*ive*, attent-*ive*, fugit-*ive*, pens-*ive*, &c. See *-iff*, p. 227.

In Early and Middle English these adjectives ended in *-if*: as, *actif*, *attentif*, &c. The *f* has dropped off in *hasty*, *jolly*, *testy*. Cp. *massive* with T.E. *massy*; and *baily* = *bailiff*. We have a large number of modern derivatives in *-ive*, as, coerc-*ive*, conclus-*ive*, affirmat-*ive*, &c. We have one hybrid, talk-*ative*.

-lent (Lat. *-lentus*) full of: corpu-*lent*, opu-*lent*, vio-*lent*, &c.



-ory (Lat. *-orius*) : amat-ory, mandat-ory, &c.

-ose (Lat. *-osus*) : bellic-ose, joc-ose, mor-ose.

-ous (Lat. *-osus*) full, like : copi-ous, curi-ous, danger-ous, fam-ous, lepr-ous, &c.

-ous also represents Lat. *-us* in the following :—

(1) Assidu-ous, continu-ous, ingenu-ous, &c.

(2) Anxi-ous, arbore-ous, &c.

(3) In the endings *-vorous*, *-fluous*, *-par-ous* :—omnivor-ous, superflu-ous, ovipar-ous, &c.

The use of *-ous* has been much extended in modern English. It is added to adjective stems, as, alacri-ous, asper-ous, atroci-ous precipit-ous, carbonifer-ous.

It occurs in many modern derivatives, as contradict-ious, felicit-ous, joy-ous.

It is added to some few Teutonic roots, as murder-ous.

Court-eous = E.E. *curt-eis*, O.Fr. *curt-eis*, court-ois.

Boister-ous = M.E. *bostois*, *boist-ous*, *bostwys*, from Welsh *bwystus*, rough, rude.

Right-eous. Here *-eous* is a corruption of *-wise*. See § 238, p. 213.

Wondr-ous. Here *-ous* is for the adverbial suffix *-s*.

"This matter is *wonders* precious."

*Everyman*, O.E. *Plays*, ed. Hazlitt, I. p. 99.

*Wonder* (used as an adverb) = O.E. *wundr-um*.

Wondr-ous-ly = *wonder-s-ly* = M.E. *wonderly*.

"Of the elements so *wondersly* formed."

*The Four Elements*, ed. Hazlitt, p. 16.

-t, -te (Lat. *-tus*), discrie-t, straigh-t, strai-t, modes-t, hones-t, chas-te, mu-te.

Words like *elect*, *perfect*, *distinct*, &c. have come direct from the Latin.

In Fr. the *c* disappears before *t*. Cp. *strait* and *strict*.



**-und, -ond** (Lat. *-undus*): ro-und (= rot-und), joc-und, sec-ond.

**-y** (Lat. *-ous*): spong-y, (Lat. *spongiosus*). We find *spongi-ous* in Gerarde's Herbal.

**-y** (N.Fr. *-if*, Lat. *-ivus*): hast-y, joll-y, mass-y, test-y. See **-ive**, p. 234.

### III. Verbal Suffixes.

**-ate** (Lat. *-atus*, the ending of the pass. part.) forms verbs from Latin and French verbs: agit-ate, alien-ate, assassin-ate, &c.; and from nouns and adjectives: accentu-ate, filtr-ate, superannu-ate, &c.

**-ise, -ize** (Lat. *-izare*, Fr. *iser*, Gr. *-ιζω*) forms verbs from nouns and adjectives: colon-ize, pulver-ize, civil-ize, fertil-ize.

**-ish** (Lat. *esc-o*; Fr. *-iss* in the pres. part. of verbs in *-ir*): establ-ish, flour-ish, fin-ish, nour-ish, pol-ish, &c.

**-fy** (Lat. *-ficare*, Fr. *-fier*): edi-fy, magni-fy, signi-fy.

#### 245. COMPOSITION WITH ROMANIC PREFIXES.

Words with these prefixes are divisible into two classes, (1) those that have come from the Latin through the Norman French, (2) those that have come directly from the Latin. The first class of words is of course the oldest. See § 244, p. 223.

**A, av** (Fr. *a, av*; Lat. *a, ab, abs*, away from):—

(1) **A**-vaunt (Fr. *a-vant*; Lat. *ab-ante*), a-d-vance, a-d-vantage, a-vert, a-bridge, a-s-soil (*absolve*), abs-tain, ab-ound, ab-use.

(2) *Ab*-dicate, *ab*-sent, *abs*-cond, &c.

**A, ad** (O.Fr. *ad*, *a*; Fr. *à*; Lat. *ad*, to) :—

By assimilation *ad-* becomes *ac-*, *af-*, *ag-*, *al-*, *an-*, *ap-*, *ar-*, *as-*, *at-*.

(1) **A-bate**, **ac-quaint** (M.Lat. *ad-cognitare*), **ac-quit**, **ac-cord**, (O.Fr. *a-cointer*), **a-c-count**.

**A-chieve**, **ac-cuse**, **a-d-venture**, (M.E. *a-venture*), **ad-journ** (M.E. *ajorne*), **ad-join**, **ad-verse**, **ad-versary**, **af-firm**, **af-fiance**, **af-finity**, **af-ford**, **a-gree**, **ag-grieve**, (M.E. *ag-regge* and *a-greve*), **a-d-monish** (M.E. *a-moneste*), **a-mount**, **a-merce**, **al-ledge**, **al-ly**, **al-low**, **ap-parel**, **ap-pear**, **ap-pease**, **ap-ply**, **ap-proach**, **ar-rive**, **as-sail**, **as-sault** (M.E. *asaute*), **as-size**, **as-suage**, **as-semble**, **at-tain**, **a-venge**, **a-vow**.

Cp. the later loans *adieu*, *adroit*, *alarm*, *alert*, *apart*, &c.

(2) **Ad-apt**, **ac-cept**, **ac-cumulate**, **ag-gravate**, **al-leviate**, **an-nex**, &c.

**An, ante** (Fr. *ans*, *ains*; Lat. *ante*) :—

(1) **An-cestor** (M.E. *ancessoure*), **an-cestry**, **v-an-guard** (= Fr. *av-ant-garde*).

(2) **Ante-cede**, **ante-meridian**, **ante-chamber**.

(3) **Ante-date**, **anti-cipate**, seem formed on the model of the Fr. *anti-dater*, *anti-cipier*.

**Circum, circu** (Lat. *circum*, around) :—

**Circum-cise**, **circu-it**, are found in M.E.

Modern compounds with this prefix are very common : *circum-scribe*, *circum-stance*, &c.

**Co, com, con** (Fr. *co*, *com*, *con*; Lat. *cum*, with) :—

**Com** becomes **col** before *l*, **cor** before *r*, and **co** before vowels.

(1) **Col-late**, **com-mand**, **com-mon**, **com-pany**,

**con-ceive, con-ceit, con-demn, con-duit, con-found, con-strue, con-vey, con-voy, &c. ; coun-sel, countenance, co-vent, con-vent.**

**Couch** (Lat. *collocare*) ; **count** (Lat. *computare*), **cost** (Lat. *constare*), **custom** (Lat. *consuetudinem*), **cover**, (Lat. *co-operire*), **curry** (Fr. *cor-royer*, for O.Fr. *con-roi* ; Lat. *con-redum*,) (*redum* = arrangements from a Teutonic root *red* to arrange. Cp. Flemish *reden*, Goth. *raidjan*, to prepare, make ready).

**Quail**, to curdle (Fr. *coailler*, Lat. *coagulare*).

(2) Modern forms are very numerous : *col-locate, com-prehend, con-duct, cor-relation, co-eval, co-executor, &c.*

(3) **Co** is sometimes joined to Teutonic roots, as, *co-worker, co-elder.*

**Counter, contra** (Fr. *contre* ; Lat. *contra*, against) :

The N.Fr. form *counter* is used as a separate word in "to run *counter* to." It has given rise to the verb *en-counter* (M.E. *countren*).

(1) **Counter-feit, counter-plead, counter-pane, cont-roller** (cp. Fr. *contrôle* = *contre-rôle*), **contr-ary, contra-diction.**

(2) *Counter-act, counter-balance, counter-mand, contra-vene, contro-vert, &c.*

(3) *contra-band* is a modern French loan.

**De** (Fr. *de, dè* ; Lat. *de*, down, from, away) :—

(1) **De-ceive, de-ceit, de-clare, de-cline, de-crease, de-fend, de-feat, de-form, de-gree, de-light, de-ny, de-liver, de-nounce, de-prave, de-serve, de-sire, de-scent, de-scry, (= de-scribe), de-spise, de-spice, de-destroy, de-vise, de-vour, &c.**

**Di-s-dain** (M.E. *dedain*), **di-still** (M.E. *destylle*).

(2) *De-ception, de-fect, de-lectable, &c.*

**De, dis, di** (Fr. *dés, dé*; Lat. *dis, di*, asunder, in two, difference, negation):—

In E.E. and M.E. the prefix *dis* has its N.Fr. form *des* or *de*.

(1) **De**-part, **de**-fy, **de**-lay, **dis**-cover, **dis**-charge, **dis**-guise, **dis**-honour, **dis**-play, **dis**-turb, **dis**-please, **dis**-pute, &c.

(2) *Dis*-cern, *di*-gest, *dif*-fer, &c.

(3) *Deluge* = mod. Fr. *déluge*, Lat. *di-luvium*.

(4) The following are hybrids: *dis*-believe (= misbelieve), *dis*-like (= mislike), *dis*-own, &c.

**E, es, ex** (Fr. *es, e*; Lat. *ex*, out of, from):—

(1) **E**-late, **e**-lection, **as**-say, **es**-say, **es**-cape, **is**-sue, **es**-pecial, **s**-pecial, **s**-ample (= **ex**-ample), **ens**-ample, **ex**-amine, **ex**-cite, **ex**-cuse, **ex**-ile, **a**-mend (= **e**-mend), **a**-fraid (Lat. *exfrigidare*) **a**-bash = O.Fr. *es-bahir*.

(2) *Ex*-alt, *e*-lect, *ex*-ecute, *ex*-empt, *ex*-pect, &c.; *ex*-emperor, *ex*-mayor.

(3) *Efface*, *élite* (= elect), are from modern French.

**Extra** (Lat. *extra*, beyond.)

(1) *Extra*-ordinary, *extra*-vagrant.

(2) *Extra*-work, *extra*-freight, are hybrids.

**Em, en, in** (Fr. *em, en*; Lat. *in*, in, into, on):—

(1) **Em**-balm, **em**-bellish, **em**-brace, **en**-chant, **en**-counter, **en**-cumber, **en**-dite, **en**-dow, **en**-gage, **en**-force, **en**-hance, **en**-join, **en**-joy, **en**-rich, **en**-tice, **en**-treat, **en**-viron, **en**-vy, &c.; **an**-oint, **am**-bush, **im**-pair, **im**-prison, **il**-lusion, **in**-cense, **in**-cline, **in**-quire (**en**-quire).

Many words once beginning with **en** now have **in**.

(2) *In*-nate, *il*-lumine, *im*-migrate, &c.

(3) Hybrids are *em*-bolden, *en*-shrine, *en*-dear, &c.

**In** (Lat. *in*, not) :—

(1) *In*-nocent, *in*-constance, *in*-fant, *im*-perfect (= M.E. *imparfit*).

(2) It is prefixed to nouns, adjectives, and verbs :—

(a) *In*-convenience, *im*-piety, *il*-liberality.

(b) *In*-cautious, *im*-politic, *il*-legal, *ir*-regular.

(c) *In*-capacitate, *in*-dispose, *il*-legalize, *im*-mortalize.

*Un* often takes the place of *in*, as *un*-able, *un*-apt, *un*-certain, &c.

**Enter, inter, intro** (O.Fr. *enter*; Fr. *entre*; Lat. *inter, intro*, within, between) :—

(1) **Enter**-prise, **enter**-tain, **inter**-dict (= M.E. *enter-dite*), *inter*-change (M.E. *enter-change*).

(2) *Inter*-cept, *inter*-sect, *intro*-duce, &c.

**Ob** (Lat. *ob*, in front of, against) :—

(1) **Ob**-lige, **ob**-ey, **oc**-cupy, **of**-fer, **of**-fend, **of**-fence, **of**-fice, **op**-pose.

(2) *Ob*-ject, *ob*-struct, *oc*-cur, *of*-ficiate, &c.

**Per** (O.Fr. *per*; Fr. *par*; Lat. *per*, through) :—

(1) **Per**-ceive, **per**-form, **per**-ish, **par**-don, **pur**-sue.

(2) *Per*-jure, *per*-secute, *pel*-lucid, *pol*-lute, &c.

**Post** (Lat. *post*, after) :—

(1) *Puny* = Fr. *puîné*, O.Fr. *puis-né*, Lat. *post natus*.

(2) *Post*-pone, *post*-date, *post*-script, &c.



**Pre** (Fr. *pré*; Lat. *præ*, before):—

(1) Pre-cept, pre-face, pre-late, pre-sence, pre-tend, pro-vost, pre-ach (= Lat. *prædicare*).

(2) Modern formations are numerous: *pre*-dict, *pre*-cinct, *pre*-announce, &c.

**Preter** (Fr. *préter*; Lat. *præter*, past):—

(1) *Preter*-ite, *preter*-mit.

(2) *Preter*-natural, *preter*-perfect.

**Par, pur, pro** (Fr. *por, pour*; Lat. *pro*, forth, forward, before):—

(1) Por-tray, pur-chase, pur-pose, pur-sue, pur-vey, pro-cede, pro-cess, pro-cure, pro-nounce.

(2) *Pro*-vide, *pro*-pose, *pro*-consul, *pro*-noun.

(3) *Por*-trait = Fr. *pour*-trait.

**Re, red** (Fr. *re*; Lat. *red, re*, back, again):—

(1) Re-bell, re-ceive, re-claim, re-creant, re-cover, re-join, re-nounce, re-member, re-pair, re-pent, re-prove, re-quire, re-store, re-semble, re-treat, rally (Lat. *re-alligare*), re-n-der (Lat. *red-dere*), red-ound.

(2) Modern formations: *re*-probate, *re*-duce, *re*-act &c.

(3) *Re*-but = Fr. *re-buter*.

(4) Hybrids: *re*-build, *re*-mind, *re*-new, &c.

**Retro** (Fr. *rière*; Lat. *retro*):—

(1) Rear-ward, *arrear*, rear. Cp. M.E. *arerege* (arrears).

(2) *Retro*-grade, *retro*-spect, &c.

**Se, sed** (Fr. *sé*; Lat. *sed, se*, apart, away):—



(1) *Se-ver*, *se-veral*.

(2) *Se-clude*, *se-parate*, *sed-ition*, &c.

**Sub**, **so** (O.Fr. *so* ; Fr. *se*, *su*, *sou* ; Lat. *sub*, under, up from below) :—

(1) **Sub-tle**, **suc-cour** (M.E. *socour*), **suc-ceed**, **suf-fer**, **sum-mons**, **sup-pose**, **sus-tain**, **so-journ**, &c.

(2) *Sub-jection*, *suc-cinct*, *sug-gest*, &c. It denotes (a) diminution, as *sub-tepid* ; (b) of a lower order, as *sub-committee*.

(3) Hybrids : *sub-let*, *sub-kingdom*.

**Sur**, **super** (Fr. *sur* ; Lat. *super*, above, beyond) :—

(1) **Sur-coat**, **sur-face**, **sur-feit**, **sur-plice**, **sur-name**, **sur-vey** ; **super-flu-ous**, **super-scription**, which occur in M.E., are directly from the Latin.

(2) Modern forms are *sur-prise*, *sur-pass*, *sur-charge*, *super-ficies*, *super-scribe*, &c., *summerset* = Fr. *soubre-saut*, Lat. *super-saltum*.

**Tres**, **tra**, **trans** (O.Fr. *tres* ; Fr. *tré*, *tra* ; Lat. *trans*, across) :—

(1) **Tres-pass**, **tra-itor**, **trea-son**, **tra-vel**, **tra-verse**, **trans-figure**, **trans-form**, **trans-late**, **trans-migration**.

(2) *Trans-cription*, *trans-port*, *tra-dition*, &c., are modern forms.

**Ultra** (Lat. *ultra*, beyond) :—

(1) **Out-rage**.

(2) *Ultra-liberal*.

**Vis, vice** (Fr. *vis*; Lat. *vice*, instead of) :—

(1) **Vic**-ar.

(2) *Vis*-count, *vice*-roi, &c.

**Bis, bi** (Lat. *bis*, twice; *bini*, two by two) :—

(1) None.

(2) *Bis*-sextile, *bi*-ennial, *bin*-ocular.

(3) *Biscuit* is modern French *biscuit*, Lat. *bis-coctum*.

**Demi** (Fr. *demi*; Lat. *dimidium*, half) :—

(1) *Demi*-god, *demi*-quaver.

**Semi** (Lat. *semi*, half) :—

(1) *Semi*-circle, *semi*-column.

**Mal, mau, male** (Fr. *mal*, *mau*; Lat. *male*, ill) :—

(1) **Mau**-gre, **mal**-ady.

(2) *Male*-diction, *mal*-evolent.

(3) *Mal*-treat, *mal*-content.

**Non** (Lat. *non*, not) :—

(1) **Noun**-power impotence. Chaucer's *Boethius*,  
P. 75.

(2) *Non*-sense, *non*-existent.

(3) *Non*-chalance, *non*-pareil.

**Mis** (Fr. *mes*; Lat. *minus*, less) :—

(1) **Mis**-chance (M.E. *mescheance*), **mis**-chief (M.E. *meschief*); (2) **mis**-fortune and **mis**-nomer are modern analogous forms.

(3) *Més*-alliance.

**Pen** (Fr. *pén*; Lat. *pæne*, almost) :—

*Pen*-insula, *pen*-ultimate.

**Sans, sine** (Fr. *sans*, Lat. *sine*, without) :—

(2) *Sine-cure*, *sin-cere*.

(3) *Sans-culotte*, *sans-culottism*.

## 246. Greek Prefixes.

Nearly all compounds with Greek prefixes are of late origin.

**An-, a-** (ἀν, ἀ), *negative* like Lat. *in-* and Eng. *un-*: *an-archy*, *an-æsthetic*, *a-pathy*.

**Amphi-** (ἀμφί), *about, on both sides*. Cp. Lat. *am*, *amb*, O.E. *umbe*, *ymbe*, *about*: *amphi-bious*, *amphi-theatre*.

**Ana-** (ἀνά), *up, up to, again, back*: *ana-logy*, *ana-lysis*, *an-ec-dote*.

**Anti-** (ἀντί), *opposite to, against*: *anti-dote*, *anti-pathy*, *anti-thesis*, *ant-arctic*.

**Apo-, ap-** (ἀπό), *away from, from*. Cp. Lat. *ab*, Eng. *off*: *apo-logy*, *apo-strophe*, *apo-gee*, *apo-crypha*, *ap-helion*.

*Apocalypse*, from the Latin, occurs in Middle English; also *pocalips* (*Piers Plowman*, B. p. 215).

**Arch-, archi-** (ἀρχή), *chief, head*: *arch-heretic*, *arch-aism*, *archi-tect*.

Shakespeare uses *arch* as a root in *King Lear*, ii. 1, "My worthy *arch*." *Arch-bishop* occurs in M.E. Chaucer has *archi-woyves* (*Clerkes Tale*), *archi-deknes* (*Prologue*). The last existed in O.E.

**Auto-, aut** (αὐτο), *self*: *auto-crat*, *auto-graph*.

**Cata-, cath-, cat-** (κατά), *down, downwards*.

about: cata-ract, cata-strophe, cath-olic, cat-hedral, cat-egorize.

**Dia-** (διά), through: dia-meter, dia-gonal.

**Di-** (δι). Cp. Lat. *dis*, Eng. *to*: di-syllable, (often mis-spelt *dissyllable*) di-phthong.

**Dys-** (δυσ) ill: dys-peptic, dys-entery.

**Ec-, ex-** (ἐκ, ἐξ) out, forth; cp. Lat. *ex*: ec-centric, ec-lectic, ex-orcism.

**En-** (ἐν), in. Cp. Lat. *in*: en-thusiasm, en-tomology, en-comium, em-piric, em-phasis, el-liptical.

**Epi-, ep-** (ἐπί), upon, on, by: epi-demic, epi-taph, epi-tome, ep-och.

**Eu-**, well: eu-logy, eu-phony.

*U* in *Utopia* is for *ov*, not *ev*.

*Evangelist* occurs in M.E. and comes through the Latin.

**Hemi-** (ἡμι), half: hemi-stich, hemi-sphere.

**Hyper-** (ὑπέρ), above, beyond. Cp. Lat. *super*, Eng. *over*: hyper-bole, hyper-critical.

**Hypo-, hyp-** (ὑπο), under. Cp. Lat. *sub*: hypo-crite, hypo-thesis, hyp-hen.

**Meta-, met-** (μετά), after, *trans*: meta-phorical, meta-morphosis, (cp. Latin trans-form), met-hod.

**Mono-, mon-** (μονο), single, alone: mono-graph, mon-archy. Also *monk* = O.E. *munec*.

**Pan-** (πάν), all: pan-theistic, pan-acea.

**Para-, par-** (παρά), beside, against: para-dox, para-site, para-phrase, par-helion, para-ble. Cp. *parley*, from Fr. through Latin.

**Peri-** (περί), round. Cp. Lat. *per*, Eng. *for*: peri-meter, peri-odical, peri-phrasis.

**Pro-** (πρό), before. Cp. Lat. *pro*, Eng. *fore*: pro-logue, pro-gnostic.

*Pro-phet* and *pro-phesy*, *prologue*, *proem* occur in M.E. Programme is Fr.

**Pros-** (πρός), towards : **pros-elyte**, **pros-ody**.

**Syn-** (σύν), with : **syn-opsis**, **syn-tax**, **sym-pathy**, **syl-logism**, **sy-stem**.

247. We have some few Greek suffixes that have come from Latin though Norman-French. See suffixes, -ic (pp. 227, 234), -m (p. 228), -ist (p. 228) -sy (p. 231), -ize (p. 236).

## APPENDIX.

Note to p. 68. he and she. In M.E. we find he and she used as nouns.

“Queþer-sum it war *sco* or *he*,  
To godd be-taght þan suld it be.”

C. MUNDI, C. l. 10205.

Note to p. 96. former = O.E. *forma*, M.E. *forme*; the r seems to have arisen out of the final e; former occurs in the *Göttingen* text of the Cursor Mundi; but *Fairfax* has *forme* and *Cotton* *form*. See Cursor Mundi, (ed. Morris, p. 526, l. 9156).

Note to p. 122. What and aught: “gif he *hwæt* dælan wyle” = “zif he *awiht* delan wule.” (See *O. E. Hom.* i. p. 297 and p. 103.)

Note to p. 189. a = of. Cp. the *Göttingen* and *Cotton* texts of the C. Mundi, l. 8968.

“Hu all þis werld sal wite *awai*.”

COTTON.

“Hou all þis world suld wit *of way*.”

GÖTTINGEN.

“Wendaþ mîn heafod *ofdune*, forþon þe mîn Drihten Hælend Crist of heofenum *adune* to eorþan astag.”

“Turn my head *adown* (downwards), because my Lord Jesus Christ came from heaven *adown* to earth.”—*Blickling Homilies*, ed. Morris, p. 191.





# INDEX.

---

*The numbers refer to the pages.*

---

- A, 19, 36, 40, 188.  
Abide, 147.  
About, 196.  
Accent, 20, 56.  
Addition of Letters, 51.  
Adjectives, 18, 58, 87.  
Ado, 218.  
Adverbs, 187.  
Adverbs, Pronominal, 190.  
After, 196.  
Agglutination, 54.  
Ago, 158.  
Alder-liefest, 51, 88.  
All and Some, 123.  
Alms, 75.  
Along of, 198, 218.  
Alphabet, 35, 39, 40.  
Also, 192.  
American words in English, 26.  
Amends, 76.  
Among, 197.  
An = if, 200.  
An, article, 96, 97.  
Analytical languages, 17.  
Anomalous verbs, 167.  
Anon, 217.  
Any, 126.  
Apocope, 51.  
Arabic words in English, 26.  
Aryan, 1, 5.  
Article, indefinite, 96.  
    definite, 114.  
As, relative, 121.  
As, adverb, 192.  
At, before infinitive, 218.  
Aught, 125.  
Augustine's mission, 11.  
Auxiliary verbs, 56, 185.  
B, 43, 46, 51.  
Be, 168—170.  
Belief, 20.  
Bequeath, past tense of, 144.  
Best, 93.  
Better, 93.  
Bit, verb, 147.  
Body, 123.  
Both, 98, 99.  
Bound (for journey) 9.  
Bridal, 215.  
Bridegroom, 69.  
But, 196.  
By, Be, 188, 189.  
Can, 171.  
Cardinal numbers. *See* Numerals.  
Case, loss of case-endings, 56, 79, 80.

- Case, 78.  
     absolute, 82.  
     possessive, 81.  
     dative, 79.
- Causative verbs, 129.
- Chaucer, 14, 16.
- Chester, 10.
- Chicken, 55, 61, 63.
- Childer, 73.
- Chinese words in English, 26.
- Classical words in English, 10,  
     21, 30.
- Cleave, 148.
- Cognates, 54.
- Comparison, 18, 56, 90.
- Comparison, double, 91.  
     marks of in pronouns, 91.  
     marks of in adverbs, 91.  
     marks of in prepositions,  
     196.
- Composition, 54.
- Compounds, 54, 78, 215.
- Conjunction, 200.
- Conquest, Norman, effects on  
     English, 13, 16.
- Consonants, 20, 37, 39.  
     classification of, 37.  
     changes of, 43, 46.
- D, 43, 51.
- Danish words in English, 9.
- Dare, 173.
- Dative, absolute, 79.  
     infinitive, 164.
- Decay, phonetic, 20, 45.
- Degrees of comparison, 90.
- Demonstrative pronouns, 114.
- Dentals, 43.
- Derivatives, 54.
- Do, 159, 183, 186.
- Dialects, 31.
- Digraphs, 40.
- Diphthongs, 36, 39.
- Distributives, 98.
- Drake, 69.
- Dutch, meaning of, 4, 5.  
     words in English, 26.
- E, 19, 36.
- Each, 126.
- Early English, 33.
- Eaves, 76.
- Either, 127, 201.
- Elder, Eldest, 92.
- Else, 127.
- Empress, 13, 67.
- English, 6.
- Enough, enow, 128.
- Epenthesis, 51.
- Epithesis, 51.
- Ere, 95.
- Ess, suffix, 65, 66.
- Euphonic changes, 42.
- Every, 126.
- Eyren, 73.
- F, 44.
- Farthest, 94.
- Fell, (hill) 9.
- Feminine gender, 18, 63.
- Few, 100.
- First, 95.
- Firth, 10.
- Foreign plurals, 77.
- Formation of words, 204.
- Formative elements, 54.
- Former, 96, 247.
- French words (modern) in  
     English, 25.
- Further, 95.
- Future tense, 134.
- G, 20, 44.
- Gander, 69.
- Gender, 19.  
     of nouns, 61.  
     of pronouns, 116.
- Genitive suffixes, 80.
- German, High, 4.  
     Low, 4.
- German words in English, 26

- Gerundial infinitive, 164.  
 Gilden, 63.  
 Go to, 221.  
 Goddess, 63.  
 Goose, 69.  
 Gossip, 43.  
 Gospel, 215.  
 Gothic, 5.  
 Grave, verb, 145.  
 Grimm's Law, 46.  
 Gutturals, 20, 44.  
  
 H, 20, 51.  
 Handy-work, 20.  
 He, 68, 106, 128.  
 Hebrew words in English, 26.  
 Hem, 60.  
 Hindu words in English, 26.  
 His = 's, sign of possession,  
     81.  
 Hosen, 73.  
 Hundred, 98.  
 Hybrids, 54.  
  
 I, 103.  
 Ilk, 117.  
 Indefinite article, 96.  
 Indo-European languages, 1.  
 Ine, feminine suffix, 67.  
 Infinitive mood, 164.  
 Inflections lost, 56.  
 Instrumental case, 115.  
 Interjections, 203.  
 Irregular comparisons, 92.  
     plurals of nouns, 72.  
     verbs, 137.  
 It, 107.  
 Italian words in English, 25.  
 Italic languages, 3.  
 Its, 113.  
  
 J, 20, 43.  
 Jaw, 43.  
  
 K, 43, 44.  
  
 Keltic languages, 3.  
     words in English, 8.  
 Kine, 72, 74.  
 King, 69.  
 L, 44, 51.  
 Labials, 43.  
 Lad, 69.  
 Lady, 69.  
 Languages, classification of, 3.  
 Lass, 69.  
 Last, 92.  
 Latin Alphabet, 35.  
 Latin words in English, 10.  
 Laws of sound-change, 42.  
 Less, 94.  
 Lest, 191.  
 Let, 132.  
 Letters, 35.  
 Lord, 69.  
 Low German, 4.  
  
 M, 43, 46.  
 Malay words in English, 26.  
 Man, 68.  
 Many, 100.  
 Marchioness, 67.  
 Masculine gender, 64.  
 May, 177.  
 Me, dative, 79.  
     indefinite pronoun, 124.  
 Means, 76.  
 Metathesis, 52.  
 Middle English, 34.  
 Mistress, 67.  
 Mo, 94.  
 Mood, indicative, 131.  
     infinitive, 132, 164.  
     imperative, 132.  
     subjunctive, 131.  
 Modern English, 34.  
 Much, 94.  
 Mum, 60.  
 Mun, 184.  
 Must, 181.  
 Mutes, 37.

N, 46, 51.

Nam, 169.

Nasals, 37

Naught, 125.

Nay, ne, no, 191.

Need, verb, 185.

Needs, 187.

Neither, 127, 201.

Nephew, 69.

Neuter gender, *see* gender.

News, 76.

Next, 92.

Niece, 69.

Nill, 176.

No, 125.

Nobody, 123.

None, 97, 125.

Norman-French words, 13,  
21.

    prefixes, 236.

    suffixes, 223.

Nostril, 215.

Not, 125, 192.

Nothing, 125.

Nought, 125.

Nouns, 61.

    verbal, 133.

Number, 70, 136.

Numerals, 96.

Nurse, 67.

O, 36, 39.

Objective case, 79.

Odds, 76.

Of, 56, 193, 195, 217.

Off, 56.

Old English, 33.

On, 96.

Once, 187.

One, 96, 124.

One = self, 111.

Or, conj., 201.

Or = ere, 197.

Orchard, 215.

Ordinals, *see* numerals.

Orthography, faults of English,  
40.

Other, 99, 201.

Otherlike, 117.

Our, Ours, 114.

Over, 95, 196.

Owe, 179.

Own, 180, 184.

Oxen, 55, 73.

P, 43, 46.

Pains, 76.

Participles, 168.

Particles, 217.

Parts of speech, 53.

Passive voice, 130.

Pease, 75.

Periods of the English lan-  
guage, 33.

Permutation of sounds, 43.

Persian words in English, 26.

Person-endings of verbs, 159.

Personal pronouns, 102.

Pesen, 73.

Plural of compounds, 78.

Plural of nouns, 70.

    adjectives, 87.

Portuguese words in English,  
25.

Possessive case, 79, 81

Prefixes, English, 217, 221.

    Romanic, 236.

    Greek, 195.

Prepositions, 195.

Pronominal adverbs, 190.

Pronouns, 101.

Pronouns, adjective, 112.

    demonstrative, 114.

    indefinite, 122.

    interrogative, 118.

    personal, 102.

    relative, 120.

    reflexive, 110.

Prothesis, 51.

Pure English words, 27.

Q, 38.

Queen, 69.

Quoth, 144.

R, 44, 51.

Rather, 93.

Reduplication, 55, 137.

Relational words, 17.

Revival of learning, 21.

Riches, 75.

Romanic languages, 3.

Romanic dialects, 3.

    prefixes, 236.

    suffixes, 223.

Roots, 54, 204.

S, 18, 44, 51.

Same, 117.

Saxons, 6.

Scandinavian languages, 3, 9.

Sclavonic languages, 3.

Seethe, 149.

Seldom, 187.

Self, 110.

Self-same, 112.

Sempster, 64.

Several, 128.

Shall (to owe), 175.

Shaw, 10.

Shoon, 73.

She, 68, 107.

Sibilants, 38, 44.

Small-pox, 76.

So, 117.

Softening of gutturals, 20, 45.

Some, 122.

Songster, 64.

Songstress, 65.

Sounds, classification of, 37.

    changes of 42.

    assimilation of, 44.

Spanish words in English, 24.

Spinster, 63.

Spirants, 37, 44.

Ster, suffix, 18, 19, 63.

Street, 10.

Strong verbs, 136, 137.

Such, 117.

Suffixes, adverbial, 187, 213.

    plural, 70.

    of pronouns, 117.

    of verbs, 159.

    English, 204.

    Roman, 223.

Sundry, 128.

Superlative degree, 91, 96.

    in *m-ost*, 96.

Sware, 145.

Swine, 74.

T, 43, 46.

Table of consonant sounds,  
    38.

    Grimm's Law, 48.

Tenses, 135.

Tapster, 64.

Ten, 97.

Tense, 134.

Teuton, Teutonic, 4.

Teutonic languages, 3.

That, 116.

The adverb, 191.

    definite article, 102, 109,  
    114.

    instrumental, 115.

Their, 184.

Ther, comparative suffix, 97.

These, 116.

They, 107.

Thilk, 117.

Thine, Thy, 112, 113.

This, 116.

Thorough, 56, 196.

Through, 56, 196.

Those, 116.

Thus, 191.

Till, 198.

To, 56.



- Too, 56.  
 Transitive verbs, 129.  
 Trills, 37, 44.  
 Turkish words in English, 26.  
 Twain, 97.  
 Twelve, 97.  
 Twenty, 97.  
  
 U, 36.  
 Ulfilas, 5.  
 Under, 196.  
 Unto, 197.  
 Utter,  
  
 V, 43.  
 Verbal nouns, 153.  
 Verbs, classification of, 129.  
     anomalous, 167.  
     causative, 129.  
     conjugation of, 136.  
     impersonal, 130.  
     intransitive, 129.  
     inflexions of, 160.  
     moods of, 131.  
     number of, 136.  
     passive, 130.  
     strong, 129.  
     transitive, 129.  
     weak, 136, 153.  
 Vixen, 62.  
 Vocabulary English, composite  
     nature of,  
 Voice, 130.  
 Vowel-change, 55, 63, 72.  
  
 Vowels, 36, 39.  
  
 Was, 143.  
 Weak verbs, 136, 153.  
 Welsh, 5.  
 Went, 158.  
 What, interrogative pronoun,  
     119.  
     relative, 121.  
     indefinite pronoun, 122.  
     for, 119.  
 Whether, 119, 120.  
 Which, 119, 120.  
 Whilom, 187.  
 Whit, 125, *see* Aught.  
 Who, indefinite pronoun, 122.  
 Wickliffe, 16.  
 Widow,        }  
 Widower,        } 19, 69.  
 Wight, 122, 123, 125.  
 Will, 176.  
 Wit, 182.  
 Wizzard, 66.  
 Witch, 66.  
 With, 196.  
 Wol, 176.  
 Worse,         }  
 Worst,         } 93.  
 Worth, verb, 170.  
 Writhe, 147.  
  
 Ye, 105.  
 Yea, 191.  
 Yes, 191.  
 Yon, yond, yonder, 117, 191.

# WORKS ON LANGUAGE.

*By the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D.*

**HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE.** Comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word-Formation. Fifth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

**ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR,** containing Accidence and Word-Formation. Second Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

**PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR.** 18mo. 1s.

**ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES.** By R. MORRIS and H. C. BOWEN. 18mo. 1s.

---

**A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR:** an Attempt to Illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, M.A., Head Master of the City of London School. New and Enlarged Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 6s.

**A SHAKESPEARE MANUAL.** By F. G. FLEAY, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**LONGER ENGLISH POEMS.** With Notes, Philological and Explanatory, and an Introduction on the Teaching of English. Chiefly for use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A., Professor of English Literature at King's College, London, &c. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**THE SOURCES OF STANDARD ENGLISH** By T. L. KINGTON OLIPHANT, M.A. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

**WORDS AND PLACES ; or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography.** By the Rev. ISAAC TAYLOR. New Edition, thoroughly Revised and Condensed for School Use. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

---

*By R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.*

**ON THE STUDY OF WORDS.** Sixteenth Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

**A SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS USED FORMERLY IN SENSES DIFFERENT FROM THEIR PRESENT.** Fourth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 4s.

**ENGLISH, PAST AND PRESENT.** Tenth Edition, Revised and Improved. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

# WORKS ON LANGUAGE.

*By H. BREYMANN, Ph.D.*

A FRENCH GRAMMAR, BASED ON PHILOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

FIRST FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

SECOND FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK. 2s. 6d.

---

FRENCH-ENGLISH AND ENGLISH-FRENCH DICTIONARY. By GUSTAVE MASSON. With Chronological and Historical Tables, &c. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo, half bound. 6s.

---

*By Professor W. D. WHITNEY.*

COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

GERMAN READER, IN PROSE AND VERSE. Crown 8vo. 5s.

GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY. With Notation of Correspondences and Brief Etymologies. By Professor WHITNEY and A. H. EDGREN. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

---

PRACTICAL HINTS ON THE QUANTITATIVE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN. By A. J. ELLIS, B.A., F.R.S. For the Use of Classical Teachers and Linguists. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

A BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CLUE TO LATIN LITERATURE. Edited after Dr. HÜBNER, with Large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY. By JOHN PEILE, M.A. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE FROM PLAUTUS TO SUETONIUS. By H. J. ROBY, M.A. Second Edition. Part I. Sounds, Inflexions, Word Formation. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Part II. Syntax, Prepositions, &c. 10s. 6d.

ETRUSCAN RESEARCHES. By the Rev. ISAAC TAYLOR, M.A. With Illustrations. 8vo. 14s.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

# HISTORY AND LITERATURE PRIMERS.

EDITED BY

JOHN RICHARD GREEN.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR. By the Rev. R. MORRIS,  
LL.D. 18mo. 1s.

HISTORY OF ROME. By the Rev. M. CREIGHTON,  
M.A. 18mo. With Eleven Maps. 1s.

HISTORY OF GREECE. By C. A. FYFFE, M.A.  
18mo. With Five Maps. 1s.

ENGLISH LITERATURE. By the Rev. STOPFORD  
BROOKE, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

HISTORY OF EUROPE. By E. A. FREEMAN,  
D.C.L., LL.D. 18mo. With Maps. 1s.

GREEK ANTIQUITIES. By J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A.  
18mo. Illustrated. 1s.

ROMAN ANTIQUITIES. By Prof. A. S. WILKINS.  
18mo. Illustrated. 1s.

CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY. By H. F. TOZER,  
M.A. 18mo. 1s.

GEOGRAPHY. By GEORGE GROVE, F.R.G.S. 18mo.  
With Maps. 1s.

CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL  
POETRY. By F. T. PALGRAVE. In Two Parts. Each 1s.

SHAKSPERE. By Prof. DOWDEN. 18mo. 1s.

PHILOLOGY. By J. PEILE, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

GREEK LITERATURE. By Prof. R. C. JEBB,  
M.A. 18mo. 1s.

ENGLISH GRAMMAR EXERCISES. By R.  
MORRIS, LL.D., and H. C. BOWEN, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

*Others to follow.*

---

PRIMER OF PIANOFORTE PLAYING. By  
FRANKLIN TAYLOR. Edited by GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L.  
18mo. 1s.

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

# SCIENCE PRIMERS.

UNDER THE JOINT EDITORSHIP OF

*PROFESSORS HUXLEY, ROSCOE, AND  
BALFOUR STEWART.*

## CHEMISTRY.

By H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Manchester. 18mo. Illustrated. 1s. With Questions.

## PHYSICS.

By BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. 18mo. Illustrated. 1s. With Questions.

## PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.

By A. GEIKIE, F.R.S., Murchison Professor of Geology and Mineralogy at Edinburgh. 18mo. Illustrated. 1s. With Questions.

## GEOLOGY.

By Professor GEIKIE, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s.

## PHYSIOLOGY.

By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s.

## ASTRONOMY.

By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s.

## BOTANY.

By Sir J. D. HOOKER, K.C.S.I., C.B., President of the Royal Society. 18mo. Illustrated. 1s.

## LOGIC.

By Professor STANLEY JEVONS, F.R.S. 18mo. 1s.

## INTRODUCTORY.

By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S.

*[Preparing, with others.]*

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

# MACMILLAN'S SCIENTIFIC CLASS-BOOKS.

POPULAR ASTRONOMY. By Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B.,  
F.R.S., Astronomer-Royal. With numerous Illustrations. 4s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY. By J.  
NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. New Edition. With numerous  
Illustrations. 5s. 6d. (Questions on, 1s. 6d.)

ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSIOLOGY. By Prof.  
HUXLEY, F.R.S. New Edition. With numerous Illustrations.  
4s. 6d. (Questions on, 1s. 6d.)

LESSONS in LOGIC, INDUCTIVE and DEDUCTIVE.  
By Prof. STANLEY JEVONS, M.A., F.R.S. New Edition. 3s. 6d.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY. By Prof.  
H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S. New Edition. With numerous Illustrations.  
4s. 6d. Problems adapted to the same by Professor THORPE. With  
Key. 18mo. 2s.

OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL  
CHEMISTRY. By F. JONES. With Preface by Prof. ROSCOE.  
New Edition. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY. By Sr.  
GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. 6s. 6d.

POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS. By Mrs.  
FAWCETT. New Edition. With numerous Illustrations. 2s. 6d.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY. By Prof.  
OLIVER, F.R.S. New Edition. With numerous Illustrations. 4s. 6d.

LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS. By Prof.  
BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S. New Edition. With numerous  
Illustrations. 4s. 6d.

AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON STEAM. By J.  
PERRY, B.E. With Illustrations, Examples, and Exercises. 18mo.  
4s. 6d.

NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR BEGINNERS. By  
I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Part I. The Properties of  
Solid and Fluid Bodies, 18mo. 3s. 6d. Part II. Sound, Light, and  
Heat. 3s. 6d.

PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY: ELEMENTARY LESSONS  
IN. By Professor GEIKIE, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations.  
18mo. 4s. 6d. Questions. 1s. 6d.

*Others to follow.*

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.



# HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS.

EDITED BY

E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L.

## GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY.

By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. New Edition, enlarged. 18mo. With Maps. 3s. 6d.

## ENGLAND.

By EDITH THOMPSON. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

## SCOTLAND.

By MARGARET MACARLUR. New Edition. 18mo. 2s.

## ITALY.

By the Rev. W. HUNT, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

## GERMANY.

By JAMES SIME, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

## AMERICA.

By J. A. DOYLE. With Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

## EUROPEAN COLONIES.

By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. With Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

*Others to follow.*

MACMILLAN AND CO., LONDON.

# A CATALOGUE OF EDUCATIONAL BOOKS,

PUBLISHED BY  
MACMILLAN AND CO.,  
BEDFORD STREET, STRAND, LONDON.

## CLASSICAL.

**ÆSCHYLUS**—*THE EUMENIDES*. The Greek Text, with Introduction, English Notes, and Verse Translation. By BERNARD DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**ARISTOTLE**—*AN INTRODUCTION TO ARISTOTLE'S RHETORIC*. With Analysis, Notes and Appendices. By E. M. COPE, Fellow and Tutor of Trinity College, Cambridge, 8vo. 14s.

*ARISTOTLE ON FALLACIES; OR, THE SOPHISTICI ELENCHI*. With Translation and Notes by E. POSTE, M.A. Fellow of Oriel College, Oxford. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**ARISTOPHANES**—*THE BIRDS*. Translated into English Verse, with Introduction, Notes, and Appendices, by B. H. KENNEDY, D.D., Regius Professor of Greek in the University of Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s.

**BELCHER**—*SHORT EXERCISES IN LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION AND EXAMINATION PAPERS IN LATIN GRAMMAR*, to which is prefixed a Chapter on Analysis of Sentences. By the Rev. H. BELCHER, M.A., Assistant Master in King's College School, London. Third Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d. Key, 1s. 6d.

**BLACKIE**—*GREEK AND ENGLISH DIALOGUES FOR USE IN SCHOOLS AND COLLEGES*. By JOHN STUART BLACKIE, Professor of Greek in the University of Edinburgh. Second Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**CICERO**—*THE SECOND PHILIPPIC ORATION*. With Introduction and Notes. From the German of KARL HALM. Edited, with Corrections and Additions, by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A. Fellow and Classical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

*THE ORATIONS OF CICERO AGAINST CATILINA*. With Notes and an Introduction from the German of KARL HALM, with additions by Professor A. S. WILKINS, M.A., Owens College, Manchester. Fourth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

*THE ACADEMICA OF CICERO*. The Text revised and explained by JAMES REID, M.A., Assistant Tutor and late Fellow of Christ's College, Cambridge. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**DEMOSTHENES**—*ON THE CROWN*, to which is prefixed *ÆSCHINES AGAINST CTESIPHON*. The Greek Text with English Notes. By B. DRAKE, M.A., late Fellow of King's College, Cambridge. Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

**ELLIS**—*PRACTICAL HINTS ON THE QUANTITATIVE PRONUNCIATION OF LATIN*, for the use of Classical Teachers and Linguists. By A. J. ELLIS, B.A., F.R.S. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**GOODWIN**—*SYNTAX OF THE MOODS AND TENSES OF THE GREEK VERB*. By W. W. GOODWIN, Ph.D. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

"This scholarly and exhaustive work."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

**GREENWOOD**—*THE ELEMENTS OF GREEK GRAMMAR*, including Accidence, Irregular Verbs, and Principles of Derivation and Composition; adapted to the System of Crude Forms. By J. G. GREENWOOD, Principal of Owens College, Manchester. Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

**HODGSON**—*MYTHOLOGY FOR LATIN VERSIFICATION*. A brief Sketch of the Fables of the Ancients, prepared to be rendered into Latin Verse for Schools. By F. HODGSON, B.D., late Provost of Eton. Fourth Edition, revised by F. C. HODGSON, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

**HOMERIC DICTIONARY.** For Use in Schools and Colleges. Translated from the German of Dr. G. Autenreith, with Additions and Corrections by R. P. KEEP, Ph.D. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6s.

**HOMER'S ODYSSEY—THE NARRATIVE OF ODYSSEUS.** With a Commentary by JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Part I. Book IX.—XII. Fcap. 8vo. 3s.

**HORACE—THE WORKS OF HORACE,** rendered into English Prose, with Introductions, Running Analysis, and Notes, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.

*THE ODES OF HORACE IN A METRICAL PARAPHRASE.* By R. M. HOVENDEN. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s.

*HORACE'S LIFE AND CHARACTER.* An Epitome of his Satires and Epistles. By R. M. HOVENDEN. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**JACKSON—FIRST STEPS TO GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION.** By BLOMFIELD JACKSON, M.A. Assistant-Master in King's College School, London. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

"A capital little book for beginners."—SPECTATOR.

**JEBB—Works** by R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow.

*THE ATTIC ORATORS FROM ANTIPHON TO ISAEOS.* 2 vols. 8vo. 25s.

*THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS.* Translated from a Revised Text, with Introduction and Notes. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

**JUVENAL—THIRTEEN SATIRES OF JUVENAL.** With a Commentary. By JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Kennedy Professor of Latin at Cambridge. Second Edition, enlarged. Vol. I. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d. Or Parts I. and II. 3s. 6d. each.

**LYSIAS—SELECT ORATIONS.** Edited, with Notes, &c., by E. S. SHUCKBURGH. *[In preparation.]*

**MARSHALL** — *A TABLE OF IRREGULAR GREEK VERBS*, classified according to the arrangement of Curtius' Greek Grammar. By J. M. MARSHALL, M.A., one of the Masters in Clifton College. 8vo. cloth. Third Edition. 1s.

**MAYOR (JOHN E. B.)**—*FIRST GREEK READER*. Edited after KARL HALM, with Corrections and large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR, M.A., Fellow and Classical Lecturer of St. John's College, Cambridge. Third Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

*BIBLIOGRAPHICAL CLUE TO LATIN LITERATURE*. Edited after HÜBNER, with large Additions by Professor JOHN E. B. MAYOR. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

"An extremely useful volume that should be in the hands of all scholars."—ATHENÆUM.

**MAYOR (JOSEPH B.)**—*GREEK FOR BEGINNERS*. By the Rev. J. B. MAYOR, M.A., Professor of Classical Literature in King's College, London. Part I., with Vocabulary, 1s. 6d. Parts II. and III., with Vocabulary and Index, 3s. 6d. complete in one Vol. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

**NIXON**—*PARALLEL EXTRACTS* arranged for translation into English and Latin, with Notes on Idioms. By J. E. NIXON, M.A., Classical Lecturer, King's College, London. Part I.—Historical and Epistolary. Second Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

*A FEW NOTES ON LATIN RHETORIC*. With Tables and Illustrations. By J. E. NIXON, M.A. Crown 8vo. 2s.

**PEILE (JOHN, M.A.)**—*AN INTRODUCTION TO GREEK AND LATIN ETYMOLOGY*. By JOHN PEILE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Christ's College, Cambridge, formerly Teacher of Sanskrit in the University of Cambridge. Third and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"A very valuable contribution to the science of language."—SATURDAY REVIEW.



**PLATO**—*THE REPUBLIC OF PLATO*. Translated into English, with an Analysis and Notes, by J. LL. DAVIES, M.A., and D. J. VAUGHAN, M.A. Third Edition, with Vignette Portraits of Plato and Socrates, engraved by JEENS from an Antique Gem. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

**PLAUTUS**—*THE MOSTELLARIA OF PLAUTUS*. With Notes, Prolegomena, and Excursus. By WILLIAM RAMSAY, M.A., formerly Professor of Humanity in the University of Glasgow. Edited by Professor GEORGE G. RAMSAY, M.A., of the University of Glasgow. 8vo. 14s.

**POTTS (A. W., M.A.)**—*HINTS TOWARDS LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION*. By ALEXANDER W. POTTS, M.A., LL.D., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Assistant Master in Rugby School; and Head Master of the Fettes College, Edinburgh. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s.

**ROBY**—*A GRAMMAR OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE*, from Plautus to Suetonius. By H. J. ROBY, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. In Two Parts. Third Edition. Part I. containing :—Book I. Sounds. Book II. Inflexions. Book III. Word-formation. Appendices. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Part II.—Syntax, Prepositions, &c. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

“Marked by the clear and practised insight of a master in his art. A book that would do honour to any country.”—*ATHENÆUM*.

**RUST**—*FIRST STEPS TO LATIN PROSE COMPOSITION*. By the Rev. G. RUST, M.A. of Pembroke College, Oxford, Master of the Lower School, King's College, London. Fifth Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

**SALLUST**—*CAII SALLUSTII CRISPI CATILINA ET JUGURTHA*. For use in Schools. With copious Notes. By C. MERIVALE, B.D. New Edition, carefully revised and enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d. Or separately, 2s. 6d. each.



**TACITUS**—*THE HISTORY OF TACITUS TRANSLATED INTO ENGLISH.* By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Notes and a Map. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

“A scholarly and faithful translation.”—SPECTATOR.

*THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANIA OF TACITUS.* A Revised Text, English Notes, and Maps. By A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. New Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d. Or separately, 2s. each.

“A model of careful editing, being at once compact, complete, and correct, as well as neatly printed and elegant in style.”—ATHENÆUM.

*THE AGRICOLA AND GERMANY, WITH THE DIALOGUE ON ORATORY.* Translated into English by A. J. CHURCH, M.A., and W. J. BRODRIBB, M.A. With Maps and Notes. New and Revised Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

*THE ANNALS.* Translated, with Notes and Maps, by A. J. CHURCH and W. J. BRODRIBB. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

*THE ANNALS.* Book VI. By the same Editors. With Notes. [Nearly ready.]

**TERENCE**—*HAUTON TIMORUMENOS.* Edited, with Introduction and Notes, by E. S. SHUCKBURGH, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. With Translation, 3s. 6d.

**THEOPHRASTUS**—*THE CHARACTERS OF THEOPHRASTUS.* An English Translation from a Revised Text. With Introduction and Notes. By R. C. JEBB, M.A., Professor of Greek in the University of Glasgow. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

“A very handy and scholarly edition.”—SATURDAY REVIEW.

**THRING**—Works by the Rev. E. THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham School.

*A LATIN GRADUAL.* A First Latin Construing Book for Beginners. New Edition, enlarged, with Coloured Sentence Maps. Fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

*A MANUAL OF MOOD CONSTRUCTIONS.* Fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d.

*A CONSTRUING BOOK.* Fcap 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**THUCYDIDES**—*BOOKS VI. AND VII.*, with Notes. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged, with Map. By the Rev. PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

**VIRGIL**—*THE WORKS OF VIRGIL RENDERED INTO ENGLISH PROSE*, with Notes, Introductions, Running Analysis, and an Index, by JAMES LONSDALE, M.A., and SAMUEL LEE, M.A. Second Edition. Globe 8vo. 3s. 6d.; gilt edges, 4s. 6a.

“A more complete edition of Virgil in English it is scarcely possible to conceive than the scholarly work before us.”—GLOBE.

**WRIGHT**—Works by J. WRIGHT, M.A., late Head Master of Sutton Coldfield School.

*HELLENICA; OR, A HISTORY OF GREECE IN GREEK*, as related by Diodorus and Thucydides; being a First Greek Reading Book, with explanatory Notes, Critical and Historical. Third Edition with a Vocabulary. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

*A HELP TO LATIN GRAMMAR*; or, The Form and Use of Words in Latin, with Progressive Exercises. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

*THE SEVEN KINGS OF ROME*. An Easy Narrative, abridged from the First Book of Livy by the omission of Difficult Passages; being a First Latin Reading Book, with Grammatical Notes. Fifth Edition. With Vocabulary, 3s. 6d.

*FIRST LATIN STEPS; OR, AN INTRODUCTION BY A SERIES OF EXAMPLES TO THE STUDY OF THE LATIN LANGUAGE*. Crown 8vo. 5s.

*ATTIC PRIMER*. Arranged for the Use of Beginners. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

*A COMPLETE LATIN COURSE*, comprising Rules with Examples, Exercises, both Latin and English, on each Rule, and Vocabularies. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

## MATHEMATICS.

**AIRY**—Works by Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., Astronomer Royal :—

*ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PARTIAL DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS.* Designed for the Use of Students in the Universities. With Diagrams. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

*ON THE ALGEBRAICAL AND NUMERICAL THEORY OF ERRORS OF OBSERVATIONS AND THE COMBINATION OF OBSERVATIONS.* Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

*UNDULATORY THEORY OF OPTICS.* Designed for the Use of Students in the University. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

*ON SOUND AND ATMOSPHERIC VIBRATIONS.* With the Mathematical Elements of Music. Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Second Edition, Revised and Enlarged. Crown 8vo. 9s.

*A TREATISE OF MAGNETISM.* Designed for the Use of Students in the University. Crown 8vo. 9s. 6d.

**AIRY (OSMUND)**—*A TREATISE ON GEOMETRICAL OPTICS.* Adapted for the use of the Higher Classes in Schools. By OSMUND AIRY, B.A., one of the Mathematical Masters in Wellington College. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**BAYMA**—*THE ELEMENTS OF MOLECULAR MECHANICS.* By JOSEPH BAYMA, S.J., Professor of Philosophy, Stonyhurst College. Demy 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**BEASLEY**—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON PLANE TRIGONOMETRY*. With Examples. By R. D. BEASLEY, M.A., Head Master of Grantham Grammar School. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**BLACKBURN (HUGH)**—*ELEMENTS OF PLANE TRIGONOMETRY*, for the use of the Junior Class in Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. By HUGH BLACKBURN, M.A., Professor of Mathematics in the University of Glasgow. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d.

**BOOLE**—Works by G. BOOLE, D.C.L., F.R.S., late Professor of Mathematics in the Queen's University, Ireland.

*A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS*. Third and Revised Edition. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. 14s.

*A TREATISE ON DIFFERENTIAL EQUATIONS*. Supplementary Volume. Edited by I. TODHUNTER. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

*THE CALCULUS OF FINITE DIFFERENCES*. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d. New Edition, revised by J. F. MOULTON.

**BROOK-SMITH (J.)**—*ARITHMETIC IN THEORY AND PRACTICE*. By J. BROOK-SMITH, M.A., LL.B., St. John's College, Cambridge; Barrister-at-Law; one of the Masters of Cheltenham College. New Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"A valuable Manual of Arithmetic of the Scientific kind. The best we have seen."—LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

**CAMBRIDGE SENATE-HOUSE PROBLEMS and RIDERS WITH SOLUTIONS:—**

1875—*PROBLEMS AND RIDERS*. By A. G. GREENHILL, M.A. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**CANDLER**—*HELP TO ARITHMETIC*. Designed for the use of Schools. By H. CANDLER, M.A., Mathematical Master of Uppingham School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.



**CHEYNE**—Works by C. H. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE PLANETARY THEORY.* With a Collection of Problems. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

*THE EARTH'S MOTION OF ROTATION.* Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**CHILDE**—*THE SINGULAR PROPERTIES OF THE ELLIPSOID AND ASSOCIATED SURFACES OF THE NTH DEGREE.* By the Rev. G. F. CHILDE, M.A., Author of "Ray Surfaces," "Related Caustics," &c. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**CHRISTIE**—*A COLLECTION OF ELEMENTARY TEST-QUESTIONS IN PURE AND MIXED MATHEMATICS;* with Answers and Appendices on Synthetic Division, and on the Solution of Numerical Equations by Horner's Method. By JAMES R. CHRISTIE, F.R.S., Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**CUMMING**—*AN INTRODUCTION TO THE THEORY OF ELECTRICITY.* By LINNÆUS CUMMING, M.A., one of the Masters of Rugby School. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**CUTHBERTSON**—*EUCLIDIAN GEOMETRY.* By FRANCIS CUTHBERTSON, M.A., LL.D., Head Mathematical Master of the City of London School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**DALTON**—Works by the Rev. T. DALTON, M.A., Assistant Master of Eton College.

*RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ARITHMETIC.* New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

*Answers to the Examples are appended.*

*RULES AND EXAMPLES IN ALGEBRA.* Part I. Second Edition. 18mo. 2s. Part II. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

**DAY**—*PROPERTIES OF CONIC SECTIONS PROVED GEOMETRICALLY.* PART I., THE ELLIPSE, with Problems. By the Rev. H. G. DAY, M.A., Head Master of Sedburgh Grammar School. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**DODGSON**—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON DETERMINANTS*, with their Application to Simultaneous Linear Equations and Algebraical Geometry. By CHARLES L. DODGSON, M.A. Small 4to. 10s. 6d.

**DREW**—*GEOMETRICAL TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS.* By W. H. DREW, M.A., St. John's College, Cambridge. Fifth Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 5s.

*SOLUTIONS TO THE PROBLEMS IN DREW'S CONIC SECTIONS.* Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**EDGAR (J. H.) and PRITCHARD (G. S.)**—*NOTE-BOOK ON PRACTICAL SOLID OR DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY.* Containing Problems with help for Solutions. By J. H. EDGAR, M.A., Lecturer on Mechanical Drawing at the Royal School of Mines, and G. S. PRITCHARD. Third Edition, revised and enlarged. Globe 8vo. 3s.

**FERRERS**—Works by the Rev. N. M. FERRERS, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON TRILINEAR CO-ORDINATES*, the Method of Reciprocal Polars, and the Theory of Projectors. Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON SPHERICAL HARMONICS, AND SUBJECTS CONNECTED WITH THEM.* Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**FROST**—Works by PERCIVAL FROST, M.A., formerly Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge; Mathematical Lecturer of King's College.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CURVE TRACING.* By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. 8vo. 12s.



**FROST** *Continued—*

*THE FIRST THREE SECTIONS OF NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA*, With Notes and Illustrations. Also a collection of Problems, principally intended as Examples of Newton's Methods. By PERCIVAL FROST, M.A. Second Edition. 8vo. 10s. 6d.

*SOLID GEOMETRY*. A New Edition, revised and enlarged of the Treatise by FROST and WOLSTENHOLME. In 2 Vols. Vol. I. 8vo. 16s.

**GODFRAY**—Works by HUGH GODFRAY, M.A., Mathematical Lecturer at Pembroke College, Cambridge.

*A TREATISE ON ASTRONOMY*, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 8vo. 12s. 6d.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE LUNAR THEORY*, with a Brief Sketch of the Problem up to the time of Newton. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 5s. 6d.

**HEMMING**—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL AND INTEGRAL CALCULUS*, for the Use of Colleges and Schools. By G. W. HEMMING, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge. Second Edition, with Corrections and Additions. 8vo. 9s.

**JACKSON** — *GEOMETRICAL CONIC SECTIONS*. An Elementary Treatise in which the Conic Sections are defined as the Plane Sections of a Cone, and treated by the Method of Projection. By J. STUART JACKSON, M.A., late Fellow of Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**JELLET (JOHN H.)**—*A TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF FRICTION*. By JOHN H. JELLET, B.D., Senior Fellow of Trinity College, Dublin; President of the Royal Irish Academy. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**JONES and CHEYNE**—*ALGEBRAICAL EXERCISES*. Progressively Arranged. By the Rev. C. A. JONES, M.A., and C. H. CHEYNE, M.A., F.R.A.S., Mathematical Masters of Westminster School. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

**KELLAND and TAIT**—*INTRODUCTION TO QUATERNIONS*, with numerous examples. By P. KELLAND, M.A., F.R.S. ; and P. G. TAIT, M.A., Professors in the department of Mathematics in the University of Edinburgh. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**KITCHENER**—*A GEOMETRICAL NOTE-BOOK*, containing Easy Problems in Geometrical Drawing preparatory to the Study of Geometry. For the use of Schools. By F. E. KITCHENER, M.A., Mathematical Master at Rugby. Third Edition. 4to. 2s.

**MAULT**—*NATURAL GEOMETRY*: an Introduction to the Logical Study of Mathematics. For Schools and Technical Classes. With Explanatory Models, based upon the Tachymetrical Works of Ed. Lagout. By A. MAULT. 18mo. 1s. Models to Illustrate the above, in Box, 12s. 6d.

**MERRIMAN** — *ELEMENTS OF THE METHOD OF LEAST SQUARES*. By MANSFIELD MERRIMAN, Ph.D. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**MILLAR**—*ELEMENTS OF DESCRIPTIVE GEOMETRY*. By J. B. MILLAR, B.E. Crown 8vo. [Nearly ready.]

**MORGAN** — *A COLLECTION OF PROBLEMS AND EXAMPLES IN MATHEMATICS*. With Answers. By H. A. Morgan, M.A., Sadlerian and Mathematical Lecturer of Jesus College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

**NEWTON'S PRINCIPIA**. Edited by Prof. Sir W. THOMSON and Professor BLACKBURN. 4to. cloth. 31s. 6d.

“Undoubtedly the finest edition of the text of the ‘Principia’ which has hitherto appeared.”—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

**PARKINSON**—Works by S. PARKINSON, D.D., F.R.S., Tutor and Prælector of St. John’s College, Cambridge.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON MECHANICS*. For the Use of the Junior Classes at the University and the Higher Classes in Schools. With a Collection of Examples. Fifth Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. cloth. 9s. 6d.

*A TREATISE ON OPTICS*. Third Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. cloth. 10s. 6d.

**PHEAR**—*ELEMENTARY HYDROSTATICS*. With Numerous Examples. By J. B. PHEAR, M.A., Fellow and late Assistant Tutor of Clare College, Cambridge. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. cloth. 5s. 6d.

**PIRIE**—*LESSONS ON RIGID DYNAMICS*. By the Rev. G. PIRIE, M.A., Fellow and Tutor of Queen's College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 6s.

**PUCKLE**—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON CONIC SECTIONS AND ALGEBRAIC GEOMETRY*. With Numerous Examples and Hints for their Solution; especially designed for the Use of Beginners. By G. H. PUCKLE, M.A. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**RAWLINSON**—*ELEMENTARY STATICS*, by the Rev. GEORGE RAWLINSON, M.A. Edited by the Rev. EDWARD STURGES, M.A. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**RAYLEIGH**—*THE THEORY OF SOUND*. By LORD RAYLEIGH, M.A., F.R.S., formerly Fellow of Trinity College, Cambridge. In 2 Vols. 8vo. Vol. I. 12s. 6d.

[Vol. II. in the press.]

**REYNOLDS**—*MODERN METHODS IN ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY*. By E. M. REYNOLDS, M.A., Mathematical Master in Clifton College. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**ROUTH**—Works by EDWARD JOHN ROUTH, M.A., late Fellow and Assistant Tutor of St. Peter's College, Cambridge; Examiner in the University of London.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE DYNAMICS OF THE SYSTEM OF RIGID BODIES*. With numerous Examples. Third and enlarged Edition. 8vo. 21s.

*STABILITY OF A GIVEN STATE OF MOTION, PARTICULARLY STEADY MOTION*. Adams' Prize Essay for 1877. 8vo. 8s. 6d.

**SMITH**—Works by the Rev. BARNARD SMITH, M.A., Rector of Glaston, Rutland, late Fellow and Senior Bursar of St. Peter's College, Cambridge.

*ARITHMETIC AND ALGEBRA*, in their Principles and Application; with numerous systematically arranged Examples taken from the Cambridge Examination Papers, with especial

**SMITH** *Continued*—

reference to the Ordinary Examination for the B.A. Degree. Thirteenth Edition, carefully revised. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

“To all those whose minds are sufficiently developed to comprehend the simplest mathematical reasoning, and who have not yet thoroughly mastered the principles of Arithmetic and Algebra, it is calculated to be of great advantage.”—ATHENÆUM.

“Mr. Smith’s work is a most useful publication. The rules are stated with great clearness. The examples are well selected, and worked out with just sufficient detail, without being encumbered by too minute explanations : and there prevails throughout it that just proportion of theory and practice which is the crowning excellence of an elementary work.”—DEAN PEACOCK.

*ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS.* New Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

“Admirably adapted for instruction, combining just sufficient theory with a large and well-selected collection of exercises for practice.”—JOURNAL OF EDUCATION.

*A KEY TO THE ARITHMETIC FOR SCHOOLS.* New Edition. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

*EXERCISES IN ARITHMETIC.* Crown 8vo. limp cloth. 2s. With Answers. 2s. 6d.

Or sold separately, Part I. 1s. ; Part II. 1s. ; Answers, 6d.

*SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC.* 18mo. cloth. 3s.

Or sold separately, Parts I. and II. 10d. each ; Part III. 1s.

*KEYS TO SCHOOL CLASS-BOOK OF ARITHMETIC.* Complete in one volume, 18mo. cloth. 6s. 6d. ; or Parts I., II., and III., 2s. 6d. each.

*SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC FOR NATIONAL AND ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.* 18mo. cloth. Or separately, Part I. 2d. ; Part II. 3d. ; Part III. 7d. Answers. 6d.

*THE SAME*, with Answers complete. 18mo, cloth. 1s. 6d.

*KEY TO SHILLING BOOK OF ARITHMETIC.* 18mo. 4s. 6d.

*EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC.* 18mo. 1s. 6d. The same, with Answers, 18mo. 1s. 9d. Answers, 3d.



**SMITH** *Continued*—

*KEY TO EXAMINATION PAPERS IN ARITHMETIC.* 18mo. 4s. 6d.

*THE METRIC SYSTEM OF ARITHMETIC, ITS PRINCIPLES AND APPLICATIONS*, with numerous Examples, written expressly for Standard V. in National Schools. Third Edition. 18mo. cloth, sewed. 3d.

*A CHART OF THE METRIC SYSTEM*, on a Sheet, size 42 in. by 34 in. on Roller, 1s. 6d., mounted and varnished price 3s. 6d. Third Edition.

"We do not remember that ever we have seen teaching by a chart more happily carried out."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

Also a Small Chart on a Card, price 1d.

*EASY LESSONS IN ARITHMETIC*, combining Exercises in Reading, Writing, Spelling, and Dictation. Part I. for Standard I. in National Schools. Crown 8vo. 9d.

"We should strongly advise every one to study carefully Mr. Barnard Smith's Lessons in Arithmetic, Writing, and Spelling. A more excellent little work for a first introduction to knowledge cannot well be written. Mr. Smith's larger Text-books on Arithmetic and Algebra are already most favourably known, and he has proved now that the difficulty of writing a text-book which begins *ab ovo* is really surmountable; but we shall be much mistaken if this little book has not cost its author more thought and mental labour than any of his more elaborate text-books. The plan to combine arithmetical lessons with those in reading and spelling is perfectly novel, and it is worked out in accordance with the aims of our National Schools; and we are convinced that its general introduction in all elementary schools throughout the country will produce great educational advantages."—WESTMINSTER REVIEW.

*EXAMINATION CARDS IN ARITHMETIC.* (Dedicated to Lord Sandon.) With Answers and Hints.

Standards I. and II. in box, 1s. 6d. Standards III., IV. and V., in boxes, 1s. 6d. each. Standard VI. in Two Parts, in boxes, 1s. 6d. each.

A and B papers, of nearly the same difficulty, are given so as to prevent copying, and the Colours of the A and B papers differ in each Standard, and from those of every other Standard, so that a master or mistress can see at a glance whether the children have the proper papers.

**SNOWBALL**—*THE ELEMENTS OF PLANE AND SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY*; with the Construction and Use of Tables of Logarithms. By J. C. SNOWBALL, M.A. Eleventh Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**SYLLABUS OF PLANE GEOMETRY** (corresponding to Euclid, Books I.—VI.). Prepared by the Association for the Improvement of Geometrical Teaching. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 1s.

**TAIT and STEELE**—*A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS OF A PARTICLE*. With numerous Examples. By Professor TAIT and MR. STEELE. New Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10. 6d.

**TEBAY**—*ELEMENTARY MENSURATION FOR SCHOOLS*. With numerous Examples. By SEPTIMUS TEBAY, B.A., Head Master of Queen Elizabeth's Grammar School, Rivington. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**TODHUNTER**—Works by I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S., of St. John's College, Cambridge.

“Mr. Todhunter is chiefly known to students of Mathematics as the author of a series of admirable mathematical text-books, which possess the rare qualities of being clear in style and absolutely free from mistakes, typographical or other.”—SATURDAY REVIEW.

*THE ELEMENTS OF EUCLID*. For the Use of Colleges and Schools. New Edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

*MENSURATION FOR BEGINNERS*. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

*ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS*. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

*KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR BEGINNERS*. Crown 8vo. 6s. 6d.

*TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS*. With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

*KEY TO TRIGONOMETRY FOR BEGINNERS*. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.



**TODHUNTER** *Continued—*

*MECHANICS FOR BEGINNERS.* With numerous Examples. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

*ALGEBRA.* For the Use of Colleges and Schools. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

*KEY TO ALGEBRA FOR THE USE OF COLLEGES AND SCHOOLS.* Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON THE THEORY OF EQUATIONS.* Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

*PLANE TRIGONOMETRY.* For Schools and Colleges. Sixth Edition. Crown 8vo. 5s.

*KEY TO PLANE TRIGONOMETRY.* Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

*A TREATISE ON SPHERICAL TRIGONOMETRY.* Third Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

*PLANE CO-ORDINATE GEOMETRY,* as applied to the Straight Line and the Conic Sections. With numerous Examples. Fifth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

*A TREATISE ON THE DIFFERENTIAL CALCULUS.* With numerous Examples. Seventh Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

*A TREATISE ON THE INTEGRAL CALCULUS AND ITS APPLICATIONS.* With numerous Examples. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

*EXAMPLES OF ANALYTICAL GEOMETRY OF THREE DIMENSIONS.* Third Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 4s.

*A TREATISE ON ANALYTICAL STATICS.* With numerous Examples. Fourth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**TODHUNTER** *Continued*—

*A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORY OF PROBABILITY*, from the time of Pascal to that of Laplace. 8vo. 18s.

*RESEARCHES IN THE CALCULUS OF VARIATIONS*, principally on the Theory of Discontinuous Solutions : an Essay to which the Adams Prize was awarded in the University of Cambridge in 1871. 8vo. 6s.

*A HISTORY OF THE MATHEMATICAL THEORIES OF ATTRACTION, AND THE FIGURE OF THE EARTH*, from the time of Newton to that of Laplace. 2 vols. 8vo. 24s.

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON LAPLACE'S, LAME'S, AND BESSEL'S FUNCTIONS*. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**WILSON (J. M.)**—*ELEMENTARY GEOMETRY*. Books I. II. III. Containing the Subjects of Euclid's first Four Books. Following the Syllabus of the Geometrical Association. By J. M. WILSON, M.A., late Fellow of St. John's College Cambridge, and Mathematical Master of Rugby School. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

*SOLID GEOMETRY AND CONIC SECTIONS*. With Appendices on Transversals and Harmonic Division. For the Use of Schools. By J. M. WILSON, M.A. Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**WILSON (W. P.)**—*A TREATISE ON DYNAMICS*. By W. P. WILSON, M.A., Fellow of St. John's College, Cambridge, and Professor of Mathematics in Queen's College, Belfast. 8vo. 9s. 6d.

**WOLSTENHOLME**—*A BOOK OF MATHEMATICAL PROBLEMS*, on Subjects included in the Cambridge Course. By JOSEPH WOLSTENHOLME, Fellow of Christ's College, sometime Fellow of St. John's College, and lately Lecturer in Mathematics at Christ's College. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

“Judicious, symmetrical, and well arranged.”—GUARDIAN.

## SCIENCE.

## ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS.

**ASTRONOMY, by the Astronomer Royal.**

*POPULAR ASTRONOMY.* With Illustrations. By Sir G. B. AIRY, K.C.B., Astronomer Royal. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

Six lectures, intended "to explain to intelligent persons the principles on which the instruments of an Observatory are constructed, and the principles on which the observations made with these instruments are treated for deduction of the distances and weights of the bodies of the Solar System."

**ASTRONOMY.**

*ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY.* With Coloured Diagram of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ, and numerous Illustrations. By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. New Edition. 18mo. 5s. 6d.

"Full, clear, sound, and worthy of attention, not only as a popular exposition, but as a scientific 'Index.'"—*ATHENÆUM*.

*QUESTIONS ON LOCKYER'S ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN ASTRONOMY.* For the Use of Schools. By JOHN FORBES-ROBERTSON. 18mo. cloth limp. 1s. 6d.

**PHYSIOLOGY.**

*LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSIOLOGY.* With numerous Illustrations. By T. H. HUXLEY, F.R.S., Professor of Natural History in the Royal School of Mines. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"Pure gold throughout."—*GUARDIAN*.

"Unquestionably the clearest and most complete elementary treatise on this subject that we possess in any language."—*WESTMINSTER REVIEW*.

**ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS, Continued—**

*QUESTIONS ON HUXLEY'S PHYSIOLOGY FOR SCHOOLS.* By T. ALCOCK, M.D. 18mo. 1s. 6d.

**BOTANY.**

*LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY BOTANY.* By D. OLIVER, F.R.S., F.L.S., Professor of Botany in University College, London. With nearly Two Hundred Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

**CHEMISTRY.**

*LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY CHEMISTRY, IN-ORGANIC AND ORGANIC.* By HENRY E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations and Chromo-Litho of the Solar Spectrum, and of the Alkalies and Alkaline Earths. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"As a standard general text-book it deserves to take a leading place."—SPECTATOR.

"We unhesitatingly pronounce it the best of all our elementary treatises on Chemistry."—MEDICAL TIMES.

*A SERIES OF CHEMICAL PROBLEMS*, prepared with Special Reference to the above, by T. E. Thorpe, Ph.D., Professor of Chemistry in the Yorkshire College of Science, Leeds. Adapted for the preparation of Students for the Government, Science, and Society of Arts Examinations. With a Preface by Professor ROSCOE. Fifth Edition, with Key, 18mo. 2s.

**POLITICAL ECONOMY.**

*POLITICAL ECONOMY FOR BEGINNERS.* By MILLICENT G. FAWCETT. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

"Clear, compact, and comprehensive."—DAILY NEWS.

"The relations of capital and labour have never been more simply or more clearly expounded."—CONTEMPORARY REVIEW.

**LOGIC.**

*ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN LOGIC*; Deductive and Inductive, with copious Questions and Examples, and a Vocabulary of Logical Terms. By W. STANLEY JEVONS, M.A. Professor of Logic in University College, London. New Edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

"Nothing can be better for a school-book."—GUARDIAN.

"A manual alike simple, interesting, and scientific."—ATHENÆUM.



**ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS** *Continued—***PHYSICS.**

*LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY PHYSICS.* By BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations and Chromolitho of the Spectra of the Sun, Stars, and Nebulæ. New Edition. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"The beau-ideal of a scientific text-book, clear, accurate, and thorough."  
EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

**PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.**

*THE OWENS COLLEGE JUNIOR COURSE OF PRACTICAL CHEMISTRY.* By FRANCIS JONES, Chemical Master in the Grammar School, Manchester. With Preface by Professor ROSCOE, and Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

**ANATOMY.**

*LESSONS IN ELEMENTARY ANATOMY.* By ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S., Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital. With upwards of 400 Illustrations. 18mo. 6s. 6d.

"It may be questioned whether any other work on anatomy contains in like compass so proportionately great a mass of information."—LANCET.

"The work is excellent, and should be in the hands of every student of human anatomy."—MEDICAL TIMES.

**STEAM.**

*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE.* By JOHN PERRY, Bachelor of Engineering, Whitworth Scholar, &c., late Lecturer in Physics at Clifton College. With numerous Woodcuts and Numerical Examples and Exercises. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"The young engineer and those seeking for a comprehensive knowledge of the use, power, and economy of steam, could not have a more useful work, as it is very intelligible, well arranged, and practical throughout."—IRONMONGER.

**PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.**

*ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY.* By A. GEIKIE, F.R.S., Murchison Professor of Geology, &c., Edinburgh. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

*QUESTIONS ON THE SAME.* 1s. 6d.

ELEMENTARY CLASS-BOOKS *Continued*—

## NATURAL PHILOSOPHY.

*NATURAL PHILOSOPHY FOR BEGINNERS.* By I. TODHUNTER, M.A., F.R.S. Part I. The Properties of Solid and Fluid Bodies. 18mo. 3s. 6d.  
Part II. Sound, Light, and Heat. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

## MANUALS FOR STUDENTS.

**FLOWER (W. H.)**—*AN INTRODUCTION TO THE OSTEOLOGY OF THE MAMMALIA.* Being the substance of the Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Surgeons of England in 1870. By W. H. FLOWER, F.R.S., F.R.C.S., Hunterian Professor of Comparative Anatomy and Physiology. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition, enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**FOSTER and BALFOUR**—*THE ELEMENTS OF EMBRYOLOGY.* By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S., and F. M. BALFOUR, M.A. Part I. crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**FOSTER and LANGLEY**—*A COURSE OF ELEMENTARY PRACTICAL PHYSIOLOGY.* By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S., and J. N. LANGLEY, B.A. Crown 8vo. 6s.

**HOOKE (Dr.)**—*THE STUDENT'S FLORA OF THE BRITISH ISLANDS.* By Sir J. D. HOOKE, K.C.S.I., C.B., P.R.S., M.D., D.C.L. Second Edition, revised. Globe 8vo. 10s. 6d.

“Cannot fail to perfectly fulfil the purpose for which it is intended.”—*LAND AND WATER.*

“Certainly the fullest and most accurate manual of the kind that has yet appeared.”—*PALL MALL GAZETTE.*

**HUXLEY and MARTIN**—*A COURSE OF PRACTICAL INSTRUCTION IN ELEMENTARY BIOLOGY.* By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S., assisted by H. N. MARTIN, M.B., D.Sc. Second Edition, revised. Crown 8vo. 6s.

“It is impossible for an intelligent youth, with this book in his hand, placing himself before any one of the organisms described, and carefully following the directions given, to fail to verify each point to which his attention is directed.”—*ATHENÆUM.*



**HUXLEY—PHYSIOGRAPHY.** An Introduction to the Study of Nature. By Professor HUXLEY, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations, and Coloured Plates. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**OLIVER (Professor)—FIRST BOOK OF INDIAN BOTANY.** By DANIEL OLIVER, F.R.S., F.L.S., Keeper of the Herbarium and Library of the Royal Gardens, Kew, and Professor of Botany in University College, London. With numerous Illustrations. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s. 6d.

"It contains a well-digested summary of all essential knowledge pertaining to Indian botany, wrought out in accordance with the best principles of scientific arrangement."—ALLEN'S INDIAN MAIL.

**PARKER and BETTANY—THE MORPHOLOGY OF THE SKULL.** By Professor PARKER and G. T. BETTANY. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Other volumes of these Manuals will follow.

### NATURE SERIES.

**THE SPECTROSCOPE AND ITS APPLICATIONS.** By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With Coloured Plate and numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**THE ORIGIN AND METAMORPHOSES OF INSECTS.** By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S., D.C.L. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"We can most cordially recommend it to young naturalists."—ATHE-  
NÆUM.

**THE TRANSIT OF VENUS.** By G. FORBES, M.A., Professor of Natural Philosophy in the Andersonian University, Glasgow. Illustrated. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**THE COMMON FROG.** By ST. GEORGE MIVART, F.R.S., Lecturer in Comparative Anatomy at St. Mary's Hospital. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**POLARISATION OF LIGHT.** By W. SPOTTISWOODE, F.R.S. With many Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**ON BRITISH WILD FLOWERS CONSIDERED IN RELATION TO INSECTS.** By Sir JOHN LUBBOCK, M.P., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**NATURE SERIES** *Continued*—**THE SCIENCE OF WEIGHING AND MEASURING, AND THE STANDARDS OF MEASURE AND WEIGHT.**

By H. W. CHISHOLM, Warden of the Standards. With numerous Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**HOW TO DRAW A STRAIGHT LINE:** a Lecture on Linkages. By A. B. KEMPE. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

*Other volumes to follow.*

**BALL (R. S., A.M.)—EXPERIMENTAL MECHANICS.** A Course of Lectures delivered at the Royal College of Science for Ireland. By R. S. BALL, A.M., Professor of Applied Mathematics and Mechanics in the Royal College of Science for Ireland. Royal 8vo. 16s.

**BLANFORD—THE RUDIMENTS OF PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY FOR THE USE OF INDIAN SCHOOLS;** with a Glossary of Technical Terms employed. By H. F. BLANFORD, F.R.S. New Edition, with Illustrations. Globe 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**FLEISCHER—A SYSTEM OF VOLUMETRIC ANALYSIS.** Translated, with Notes and Additions, from the second German Edition, by M. M. PATTISON MUIR, F.R.S.E. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**FOSTER—A TEXT BOOK OF PHYSIOLOGY.** By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S. With Illustrations. New Edition, enlarged, with additional Illustrations and Plates. 8vo. 21s.

**GORDON—AN ELEMENTARY BOOK ON HEAT.** By J. E. H. GORDON, B.A., Gonville and Caius College, Cambridge. Crown 8vo. 2s.

**MIALL—STUDIES IN COMPARATIVE ANATOMY.** No. I.—The Skull of the Crocodile: a Manual for Students. By L. C. MIALl, Professor of Biology in the Yorkshire College and Curator of the Leeds Museum. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**REULEAUX — THE KINEMATICS OF MACHINERY.** Outlines of a Theory of Machines. By Professor F. REULEAUX. Translated and Edited by Professor A. B. KENNEDY, C.E. With 450 Illustrations. Medium 8vo. 21s.

**ROSCOE and SCHORLEMMER**—*CHEMISTRY*, A Complete Treatise on. By Professor H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., and Professor C. SCHORLEMMER, F.R.S. Vol. I.—The Non-Metallic Elements. With numerous Illustrations, and Portrait of Dalton. Medium 8vo. 21s. [Vol. II. in the press.]

**SHANN**—*AN ELEMENTARY TREATISE ON HEAT, IN RELATION TO STEAM AND THE STEAM-ENGINE*. By G. SHANN, M.A. With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

## SCIENCE PRIMERS FOR ELEMENTARY SCHOOLS.

Under the joint Editorship of Professors HUXLEY, ROSCOE, and BALFOUR STEWART.

"These Primers are extremely simple and attractive, and thoroughly answer their purpose of just leading the young beginner up to the threshold of the long avenues in the Palace of Nature which these titles suggest."—GUARDIAN.

"They are wonderfully clear and lucid in their instruction, simple in style, and admirable in plan."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

**CHEMISTRY**—By H. E. ROSCOE, F.R.S., Professor of Chemistry in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s. New Edition. With Questions.

"A very model of perspicacity and accuracy."—CHEMIST AND DRUGGIST.

**PHYSICS**—By BALFOUR STEWART, F.R.S., Professor of Natural Philosophy in Owens College, Manchester. With numerous Illustrations. 18mo. 1s. New Edition. With Questions.

**PHYSICAL GEOGRAPHY**—By ARCHIBALD GEIKIE, F.R.S., Murchison Professor of Geology and Mineralogy at Edinburgh. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition, with Questions. 18mo. 1s.

"Everyone of his lessons is marked by simplicity, clearness, and correctness."—ATHENÆUM.

**GEOLOGY**—By Professor GEIKIE, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

"It is hardly possible for the dullest child to misunderstand the meaning of a classification of stones after Professor Geikie's explanation."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

**SCIENCE PRIMERS** *Continued*—

**PHYSIOLOGY**—By MICHAEL FOSTER, M.D., F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

“The book seems to us to leave nothing to be desired as an elementary text-book.”—ACADEMY.

**ASTRONOMY**—By J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

“This is altogether one of the most likely attempts we have ever seen to bring astronomy down to the capacity of the young child.”—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

**BOTANY**—By Sir J. D. HOOKER, K.C.S.I., C.B., President of the Royal Society. With numerous Illustrations. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

“To teachers the Primer will be of inestimable value, and not only because of the simplicity of the language and the clearness with which the subject matter is treated, but also on account of its coming from the highest authority, and so furnishing positive information as to the most suitable methods of teaching the science of botany.”—NATURE.

**LOGIC**—By Professor STANLEY JEVONS, F.R.S. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

“It appears to us admirably adapted to serve both as an introduction to scientific reasoning, and as a guide to sound judgment and reasoning in the ordinary affairs of life.”—ACADEMY.

*In preparation :—*

**INTRODUCTORY.** By Professor HUXLEY. &c. &c.

## SCIENCE LECTURES AT SOUTH KENSINGTON

With Illustrations. Crown 8vo. 6d. each.

**SOUND AND MUSIC.** By Dr. W. H. STONE.

**PHOTOGRAPHY.** By Captain ABNEY, R.E.

**KINEMATIC MODELS.** By Professor KENNEDY, C.E.



**SCIENCE LECTURES** *Continued—*

*OUTLINES OF FIELD GEOLOGY.* By Professor GEIKIE, F.R.S.

*ABSORPTION OF LIGHT, AND FLUORESCENCE.*  
By Professor STOKES, F.R.S.

*TECHNICAL CHEMISTRY.* By Professor ROSCOE, F.R.S.

*THE STEAM ENGINE.* By F. J. BRAMWELL, C.E., F.R.S.

*ELECTROMETERS.* By J. BOTTOMLEY, F.R.S.E.

## MANCHESTER SCIENCE LECTURES FOR THE PEOPLE.

Eighth Series, 1876-7. Crown 8vo. Illustrated. 6*d.* each.

*WHAT THE EARTH IS COMPOSED OF.* By Professor ROSCOE, F.R.S.

*THE SUCCESSION OF LIFE ON THE EARTH.* By Professor WILLIAMSON, F.R.S.

*WHY THE EARTH'S CHEMISTRY IS AS IT IS.* By J. N. LOCKYER, F.R.S.

Also complete in One Volume. Crown 8vo. cloth. 2*s.*

## MISCELLANEOUS.

**ABBOTT**—*A SHAKESPEARIAN GRAMMAR.* An Attempt to illustrate some of the Differences between Elizabethan and Modern English. By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. New Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6*s.*

"Valuable not only as an aid to the critical study of Shakespeare, but as tending to familiarise the reader with Elizabethan English in general."  
—*ATHENÆUM.*



**ANDERSON**—*LINEAR PERSPECTIVE, AND MODEL DRAWING.* A School and Art Class Manual, with Questions and Exercises for Examination, and Examples of Examination Papers. By LAURENCE ANDERSON. With Illustrations. Royal 8vo. 2s.

**BARKER**—*FIRST LESSONS IN THE PRINCIPLES OF COOKING.* By LADY BARKER. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"An unpretending but invaluable little work . . . The plan is admirable in its completeness and simplicity ; it is hardly possible that anyone who can read at all can fail to understand the practical lessons on bread and beef, fish and vegetables."—SPECTATOR.

**BERNERS**—*FIRST LESSONS ON HEALTH.* By J. BERNERS. Seventh Edition. 18mo. 1s.

**BREYMANN**—Works by HERMANN BREYMANN, Ph.D., Professor of Philology in the University of Munich.

*A FRENCH GRAMMAR BASED ON PHILOLOGICAL PRINCIPLES.* Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"A good, sound, valuable philological grammar."—SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.

*FIRST FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK.* Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

*SECOND FRENCH EXERCISE BOOK.* Extra fcap. 8vo. 2s. 6d.

**CALDERWOOD**—*HANDBOOK OF MORAL PHILOSOPHY.* By the Rev. HENRY CALDERWOOD, LL.D., Professor of Moral Philosophy, University of Edinburgh. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"A compact and useful work . . . will be an assistance to many students outside the author's own University."—GUARDIAN.

**DELAMOTTE**—*A BEGINNER'S DRAWING BOOK.* By P. H. DELAMOTTE, F.S.A. Progressively arranged. New Edition improved. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

"A concise, simple, and thoroughly practical work."—GUARDIAN.

**FAWCETT**—*TALES IN POLITICAL ECONOMY.* By MILLICENT GARRETT FAWCETT. Globe 8vo. 3s.

"The idea is a good one, and it is quite wonderful what a mass of economic teaching the author manages to compress into a small space."—ATHENÆUM.

**FEARON**—*SCHOOL INSPECTION*. By D. R. FEARON, M.A., Assistant Commissioner of Endowed Schools. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 2s. 6d.

"The work is admirably adapted to serve the purpose for which it has been written. It is calculated to be eminently useful, and to have a powerful influence for good on our elementary education."—*ATHENÆUM*.

**FLEAY**—*A SHAKESPEARE MANUAL*. By F. G. FLEAY, M.A., Head Master of Skipton Grammar School. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"A valuable contribution to the study of Shakespeare."—*SATURDAY REVIEW*.

**GOLDSMITH**—*THE TRAVELLER*, or a Prospect of Society ; and *THE DESERTED VILLAGE*. By OLIVER GOLDSMITH. With Notes Philological and Explanatory, by J. W. HALES, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6d.

**HALES**—*LONGER ENGLISH POEMS*, with Notes, Philological and Explanatory, and an Introduction on the Teaching of English. Chiefly for Use in Schools. Edited by J. W. HALES, M.A., Professor of English Literature at King's College, London, &c. &c. Fifth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"The notes are very full and good, and the book, edited by one of our most cultivated English scholars, is probably the best volume of selections ever made for the use of English schools."—*PROFESSOR MORLEY'S First Sketch of English Literature*.

**HOLE**—*A GENEALOGICAL STEMMA OF THE KINGS OF ENGLAND AND FRANCE*. By the Rev. C. HOLE. On Sheet. 1s.

**JEPHSON**—*SHAKESPEARE'S "TEMPEST."* With Glossarial and Explanatory Notes. By the Rev. J. M. JEPHSON. Second Edition. 18mo. 1s.

**LITERATURE PRIMERS**—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN, Author of "A Short History of the English People."

*ENGLISH GRAMMAR*. By the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D., President of the Philological Society. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

"A work quite precious in its way . . . . An excellent English Grammar for the lowest form."—*EDUCATIONAL TIMES*.

**LITERATURE PRIMERS** *Continued—*

*THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY.* Selected and arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. In Two Parts. 18mo. 1s. each.

*ENGLISH LITERATURE.* By the Rev. STOPFORD BROOKE, M.A. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"Unquestionably the best short sketch of English literature that has appeared."—ATHENÆUM.

*PHILOLOGY.* By J. PEILE, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

"Surely so much matter thoroughly good and clear was never before brought close together in the same compass."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

*GREEK LITERATURE.* By Professor JEBB, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

*SHAKSPERE.* By Professor DOWDEN. 18mo. 1s.

In preparation :—

*ENGLISH EXERCISE BOOK.* By R. MORRIS, LL.D.

*LATIN LITERATURE.*

*BIBLE PRIMER.* By the Rev. STOPFORD BROOKE.

*CHAUCER.* By F. J. FURNIVALL, M.A.

**MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE FRENCH COURSE**—By G. EUGENE-FASNACHT, Senior Master of Modern Languages Harpur Foundation Modern School, Bedford.

I.—First year, containing Easy Lessons on the Regular Accidence. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s.

II.—Second Year, containing Conversational Lessons on Systematic Accidence and Elementary Syntax. With Philological Illustrations and Etymological Vocabulary. 1s. 6d.

**MACMILLAN'S PROGRESSIVE GERMAN COURSE**—By G. EUGENE FASNACHT. [*Immediately.*]

**MARTIN**—*THE POET'S HOUR*: Poetry selected and arranged for Children. By FRANCES MARTIN. Third Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

*SPRING-TIME WITH THE POETS*: Poetry selected by FRANCES MARTIN. Second Edition. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

**MASSON (GUSTAVE)**—*A COMPENDIOUS DICTIONARY OF THE FRENCH LANGUAGE* (French-English and English-French). Followed by a List of the Principal Diverging Derivations, and preceded by Chronological and Historical Tables. By GUSTAVE MASSON, Assistant-Master and Librarian, Harrow School. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. half-bound. 6s.

**MASSON (GUSTAVE)** *Continued*—

"A book which any student, whatever may be the degree of his advancement in the language, would do well to have on the table close at hand while he is reading."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

**MORRIS**—Works by the Rev. R. MORRIS, LL.D., Lecturer on English Language and Literature in King's College School.

*HISTORICAL OUTLINES OF ENGLISH ACCIDENCE*, comprising Chapters on the History and Development of the Language, and on Word-formation. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

"It marks an era in the study of the English tongue."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

"A genuine and sound book."—ATHENÆUM.

*ELEMENTARY LESSONS IN HISTORICAL ENGLISH GRAMMAR*, containing Accidence and Word-formation. Third Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

*PRIMER OF ENGLISH GRAMMAR*. 18mo. 1s.

*ENGLISH EXERCISE BOOK*. 18mo. [*In the press.*]

**OLIPHANT**—*THE SOURCES OF STANDARD ENGLISH.*

By J. KINGTON OLIPHANT. Extra fcap. 8vo. 6s.

"Comes nearer to a history of the English language than anything that we have seen since such a history could be written without confusion and contradictions."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

**PALGRAVE**—*THE CHILDREN'S TREASURY OF LYRICAL POETRY*. Selected and Arranged with Notes by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE. 18mo. 2s. 6d. Also in Two parts. 18mo. 1s. each.

"While indeed a treasure for intelligent children, it is also a work which many older folk will be glad to have."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

**PYLODET**—*NEW GUIDE TO GERMAN CONVERSATION*: containing an Alphabetical List of nearly 800 Familiar Words followed by Exercises, Vocabulary of Words in frequent use; Familiar Phrases and Dialogues; a Sketch of German Literature, Idiomatic Expressions, &c. By L. PYLODET. 18mo. cloth limp. 2s. 6d.

*A SYNOPSIS OF GERMAN GRAMMAR*. From the above. 18mo. 6d.



**READING BOOKS**—Adapted to the English and Scotch Codes.  
Bound in Cloth.

*PRIMER.* 18mo. (48 pp.) 2*d.*

*BOOK I.* for Standard I. 18mo. (96 pp.) 4*d.*

„ II. „ II. 18mo. (144 pp.) 5*d.*

„ III. „ III. 18mo. (160 pp.) 6*d.*

„ IV. „ IV. 18mo. (176 pp.) 8*d.*

„ V. „ V. 18mo. (380 pp.) 1*s.*

„ VI. „ VI. Crown 8vo. (430 pp.) 2*s.*

Book VI. is fitted for higher Classes, and as an Introduction to English Literature.

“They are far above any others that have appeared both in form and substance. . . . The editor of the present series has rightly seen that reading books must ‘aim chiefly at giving to the pupils the power of accurate, and, if possible, apt and skilful expression; at cultivating in them a good literary taste, and at arousing a desire of further reading.’ This is done by taking care to select the extracts from true English classics, going up in Standard VI. course to Chaucer, Hooker, and Bacon, as well as Wordsworth, Macaulay, and Froude. . . . This is quite on the right track, and indicates justly the ideal which we ought to set before us.”—  
GUARDIAN.

**SKEAT**—*SHAKESPEARE'S PLUTARCH.* Being a Selection from the Lives in North's Plutarch which illustrate Shakespeare's Plays. Edited, with Introductions, Notes, Index of Names, and Glossarial Index, by the Rev. W. W. SKEAT, M.A. Crown 8vo. 6*s.*

**SONNENSCHN and MEIKLEJOHN**—*THE ENGLISH METHOD OF TEACHING TO READ.* By A. SONNENSCHN and J. M. D. MEIKLEJOHN, M.A. Fcap. 8vo.

COMPRISING :

*THE NURSERY BOOK*, containing all the Two-Letter Words in the Language. 1*d.* (Also in Large Type on Sheets for School Walls. 5*s.*)

*THE FIRST COURSE*, consisting of Short Vowels with Single Consonants. 6*d.*

*THE SECOND COURSE*, with Combinations and Bridges. consisting of Short Vowels with Double Consonants. 6*d.*



**SONNENSCHNEN and MEIKLEJOHN** *Continued*—

*THE THIRD AND FOURTH COURSES*, consisting of Long Vowels, and all the Double Vowels in the Language. 6*d*.

"These are admirable books, because they are constructed on a principle, and that the simplest principle on which it is possible to learn to read English."—SPECTATOR.

**TAYLOR**—*WORDS AND PLACES*; or, Etymological Illustrations of History, Ethnology, and Geography. By the Rev. ISAAC TAYLOR, M.A. Third and cheaper Edition, revised and compressed. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6*s*.

**TAYLOR**—*A PRIMER OF PIANOFORTE PLAYING*. By FRANKLIN TAYLOR. Edited by GEORGE GROVE. 18mo. 1*s*.

"There are many hints of almost priceless worth not only to pupils but to teachers."—MORNING POST.

**TEGETMEIER**—*HOUSEHOLD MANAGEMENT AND COOKERY*. With an Appendix of Recipes used by the Teachers of the National School of Cookery. By W. B. TEGETMEIER. Compiled at the request of the School Board for London. 18mo. 1*s*.

**THRING**—Works by EDWARD THRING, M.A., Head Master of Uppingham.

*THE ELEMENTS OF GRAMMAR TAUGHT IN ENGLISH*. With Questions. Fourth Edition. 18mo. 2*s*.

*THE CHILD'S GRAMMAR*. Being the Substance of "The Elements of Grammar taught in English," adapted for the Use of Junior Classes. A New Edition. 18mo. 1*s*.

*SCHOOL SONGS*. A Collection of Songs for Schools. With the Music arranged for four Voices. Edited by the Rev. E. THRING and H. RICCIUS. Folio. 7*s*. 6*d*.

**TRENCH (ARCHBISHOP)**—Works by R. C. TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin.

*HOUSEHOLD BOOK OF ENGLISH POETRY*. Selected and Arranged, with Notes. Second Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5*s*. 6*d*.

"The Archbishop has conferred in this delightful volume an important gift on the whole English-speaking population of the world."—PALL MALL GAZETTE.

**TRENCH (ARCHBISHOP)** *Continued*—

*ON THE STUDY OF WORDS.* Lectures addressed (originally) to the Pupils at the Diocesan Training School, Winchester. Sixteenth Edition, revised. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

*ENGLISH, PAST AND PRESENT.* Tenth Edition, revised and improved. Fcap. 8vo. 5s.

*A SELECT GLOSSARY OF ENGLISH WORDS,* used formerly in Senses Different from their Present. Fourth Edition, enlarged. Fcap. 8vo. 4s. 6d.

**VAUGHAN (C. M.)**—*WORDS FROM THE POETS.* By C. M. VAUGHAN. Eighth Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

**WHITNEY**—Works by WILLIAM D. WHITNEY, Professor of Sanskrit and Instructor in Modern Languages in Yale College; first President of the American Philological Association, and hon. member of the Royal Asiatic Society of Great Britain and Ireland; and Correspondent of the Berlin Academy of Sciences.

*A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN GRAMMAR.* Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

*A GERMAN READER IN PROSE AND VERSE,* with Notes and Vocabulary. Crown 8vo. 5s.

**WHITNEY AND EDGREN**—*A COMPENDIOUS GERMAN AND ENGLISH DICTIONARY,* with Notation of Correspondences and Brief Etymologies. By Professor W. D. WHITNEY, assisted by A. H. EDGREN. Crown 8vo. 7s. 6d.

**YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)**—*THE ABRIDGED BOOK OF GOLDEN DEEDS.* A Reading Book for Schools and general readers. By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." 18mo. cloth. 1s.

## HISTORY.

**FREEMAN (EDWARD A.)**—*OLD-ENGLISH HISTORY.*

By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., LL.D., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford. With Five Coloured Maps. Fourth Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. half-bound. 6s.

"The book indeed is full of instruction and interest to students of all ages, and he must be a well-informed man indeed who will not rise from its perusal with clearer and more accurate ideas of a too much neglected portion of English History."—SPECTATOR.

**GREEN.**—*A SHORT HISTORY OF THE ENGLISH PEOPLE.* By JOHN RICHARD GREEN. With Coloured Maps, Genealogical Tables, and Chronological Annals. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d. Fifty-Second Thousand.

"Stands alone as the one general history of the country, for the sake of which all others, if young and old are wise, will be speedily and surely set aside."—ACADEMY.

**HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS**—Edited by EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L., late Fellow of Trinity College, Oxford.

I. *GENERAL SKETCH OF EUROPEAN HISTORY.* By EDWARD A. FREEMAN, D.C.L. New Edition, revised and enlarged, with Chronological Table, Maps, and Index. 18mo. cloth. 3s. 6d.

"It supplies the great want of a good foundation for historical teaching. The scheme is an excellent one, and this instalment has been executed in a way that promises much for the volumes that are yet to appear."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

II. *HISTORY OF ENGLAND.* By EDITH THOMPSON. New Edition. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

"Freedom from prejudice, simplicity of style, and accuracy of statement are the characteristics of this little volume. It is a trustworthy text-book and likely to be generally serviceable in schools."—PALL MALL GAZETTE.

"Upon the whole, this manual is the best sketch of English history for the use of young people we have yet met with."—ATHENÆUM.

III. *HISTORY OF SCOTLAND.* By MARGARET MACARTHUR. New Edition. 18mo. 2s.

"An excellent summary, unimpeachable as to facts, and putting them in the clearest and most impartial light attainable."—GUARDIAN.

"Miss Macarthur has performed her task with admirable care, clearness, and fulness, and we have now for the first time a really good School History of Scotland."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

IV. *HISTORY OF ITALY.* By the Rev. W. HUNT, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

"It possesses the same solid merit as its predecessors . . . the same scrupulous care about fidelity in details. . . . It is distinguished, too, by information on art, architecture, and social politics, in which the writer's grasp is seen by the firmness and clearness of his touch"—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

V. *HISTORY OF GERMANY.* By J. SIME, M.A. 18mo. 3s.

**HISTORICAL COURSE FOR SCHOOLS, *Continued*—**

"A remarkably clear and impressive history of Germany. Its great events are wisely kept as central figures, and the smaller events are carefully kept, not only subordinate and subservient, but most skilfully woven into the texture of the historical tapestry presented to the eye."—**STANDARD.**

**VI. HISTORY OF AMERICA.** By JOHN A. DOYLE.  
With Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"Mr. Doyle has performed his task with admirable care, fulness, and clearness, and for the first time we have for schools an accurate and interesting history of America, from the earliest to the present time."—**STANDARD.**

**EUROPEAN COLONIES.** By E. J. PAYNE, M.A. With  
Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"We have seldom met with an historian capable of forming a more comprehensive, far-seeing, and unprejudiced estimate of events and peoples, and we can commend this little work as one certain to prove of the highest interest to all thoughtful readers."—**TIMES.**

The following is in preparation :—

**FRANCE.** By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE.

**HISTORY PRIMERS**—Edited by JOHN RICHARD GREEN.  
Author of "A Short History of the English People."

**ROME.** By the Rev. M. CREIGHTON, M.A., Fellow and  
Tutor of Merton College, Oxford. With Eleven Maps. New  
Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"The author has been curiously successful in telling in an intelligent way the story of Rome from first to last."—**SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.**

**GREECE.** By C. A. FYFFE, M.A., Fellow and late Tutor  
of University College, Oxford. With Five Maps. New  
Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"We give our unqualified praise to this little manual."—**SCHOOL-MASTER.**

**EUROPEAN HISTORY.** By E. A. FREEMAN, D.C.L.,  
LL.D. With Maps. New Edition. 18mo. 1s.

"A marvel of clearness."—**ACADEMY.**

"The work is always clear, and forms a luminous key to European history."—**SCHOOL BOARD CHRONICLE.**

"There are few writers but himself who could have compressed so much information in so little space."—**EDUCATIONAL TIMES.**



**HISTORY PRIMERS** *Continued—*

**GREEK ANTIQUITIES.** By the Rev. J. P. MAHAFFY, M.A. Illustrated. 18mo. 1s.

"All that is necessary for the scholar to know is told so compactly yet so fully, and in a style so interesting, that it is impossible for even the dullest boy to look on this little work in the same light as he regards his other school books."—SCHOOLMASTER.

**CLASSICAL GEOGRAPHY.** By H. F. TOZER, M.A. 18mo. 1s.

"Another valuable aid to the study of the ancient world. . . . It contains an enormous quantity of information packed into a small space, and at the same time communicated in a very readable shape."—JOHN BULL.

**GEOGRAPHY.** By GEORGE GROVE, D.C.L. With Maps. 18mo. 1s.

"A model of what such a work should be . . . we know of no short treatise better suited to infuse life and spirit into the dull lists of proper names of which our ordinary class-books so often almost exclusively consist."—TIMES.

**ROMAN ANTIQUITIES.** By Professor WILKINS. Illustrated. 18mo. 1s.

"A little book that throws a blaze of light on Roman History, and is, moreover, intensely interesting."—*School Board Chronicle*.

In preparation :—

**ENGLAND.** By J. R. GREEN, M.A.

**FRANCE.** By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE.

**MICHELET—A SUMMARY OF MODERN HISTORY.**

Translated from the French of M. MICHELET, and continued to the Present Time, by M. C. M. SIMPSON. Globe 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"We are glad to see one of the ablest and most useful summaries of European history put into the hands of English readers. The translation is excellent."—STANDARD.

**OTTÉ.—SCANDINAVIAN HISTORY.** By E. C. OTTÉ. With Maps. Globe 8vo. 6s.

"A readable, well-arranged, complete, and accurate volume."—LITERARY REVIEW.

**PAULI.—PICTURES OF OLD ENGLAND.** By Dr. R. PAULI. Translated with the sanction of the Author by E. C. OTTÉ. Cheaper Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.



**YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)—A PARALLEL HISTORY OF FRANCE AND ENGLAND :** consisting of Outlines and Dates. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe," "Cameos of English History," &c., &c. Oblong 4to. 3s. 6d.

"We can imagine few more really advantageous courses of historical study for a young mind than going carefully and steadily through Miss Yonge's excellent little book."—EDUCATIONAL TIMES.

**CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY. — FROM ROLLO TO EDWARD II.** By the Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe." Extra fcap. 8vo. Third Edition, enlarged. 5s.

"Instead of dry details, we have living pictures, faithful, vivid, and striking."—NONCONFORMIST.

**A SECOND SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY—THE WARS IN FRANCE.** Third Edition. Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.

"Though mainly intended for young readers, they will, if we mistake not, be found very acceptable to those of more mature years, and the life and reality imparted to the dry bones of history cannot fail to be attractive to readers of every age."—JOHN BULL.

**A THIRD SERIES OF CAMEOS FROM ENGLISH HISTORY—THE WARS OF THE ROSES.** Extra fcap. 8vo. 5s.

**A FOURTH SERIES.**

[In the press.]

**EUROPEAN HISTORY.** Narrated in a Series of Historical Selections from the Best Authorities. Edited and arranged by E. M. SEWELL and C. M. YONGE. First Series, 1003—1154. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s. Second Series, 1088—1228. Third Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.

"We know of scarcely anything which is so likely to raise to a higher level the average standard of English education."—GUARDIAN.

## DIVINITY.

\* \* For other Works by these Authors, see THEOLOGICAL CATALOGUE.

**ABBOTT (REV. E. A.)—BIBLE LESSONS.** By the Rev. E. A. ABBOTT, D.D., Head Master of the City of London School. Second Edition. Crown 8vo. 4s. 6d.

"Wise, suggestive, and really profound initiation into religious thought."

—GUARDIAN.

"I think nobody could read them without being both the better for them himself, and being also able to see how this difficult duty of imparting a sound religious education may be effected."—BISHOP OF ST. DAVID'S AT ABERGWILLY.

**ARNOLD—A BIBLE-READING FOR SCHOOLS—THE GREAT PROPHECY OF ISRAEL'S RESTORATION** (Isaiah, Chapters xl.—lxvi.). Arranged and Edited for Young Learners. By MATTHEW ARNOLD, D.C.L., formerly Professor of Poetry in the University of Oxford, and Fellow of Oriel. Fourth Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s.

"There can be no doubt that it will be found excellently calculated to further instruction in Biblical literature in any school into which it may be introduced; and we can safely say that whatever school uses the book, it will enable its pupils to understand Isaiah, a great advantage compared with other establishments which do not avail themselves of it."—TIMES.

**ISAIAH XL.—LXVI.** With the Shorter Prophecies allied to it. Arranged and Edited, with Notes, by MATTHEW ARNOLD. Crown 8vo. 5s.

**GOLDEN TREASURY PSALTER—Students' Edition.** Being an Edition of "The Psalms Chronologically Arranged, by Four Friends," with briefer Notes. 18mo. 3s. 6d.

**HARDWICK—Works by Archdeacon HARDWICK.**

**A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.** Middle Age. From Gregory the Great to the Excommunication of Luther. Edited by WILLIAM STUBBS, M.A., Regius Professor of Modern History in the University of Oxford. With Four Maps constructed for this work by A. KEITH JOHNSTON. Fourth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"As a manual for the student of ecclesiastical history in the Middle Ages, we know no English work which can be compared to Mr. Hardwick's book."—GUARDIAN.

**HARDWICK** *Continued*—

*A HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH DURING THE REFORMATION.* Fourth Edition. Edited by Professor STUBBS. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**MACLEAR**—Works by the Rev. G. F. MACLEAR, D.D., Head Master of King's College School.

*A CLASS-BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY.* Tenth Edition, with Four Maps. 18mo. 4s. 6d.

"A careful and elaborate though brief compendium of all that modern research has done for the illustration of the Old Testament. We know of no work which contains so much important information in so small a compass."—BRITISH QUARTERLY REVIEW.

*A CLASS-BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY,* including the Connection of the Old and New Testament. With Four Maps. Sixth Edition. 18mo. 5s. 6d.

"A singularly clear and orderly arrangement of the Sacred Story. His work is solidly and completely done."—ATHENÆUM.

*A SHILLING BOOK OF OLD TESTAMENT HISTORY,* for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

*A SHILLING BOOK OF NEW TESTAMENT HISTORY,* for National and Elementary Schools. With Map. 18mo. cloth. New Edition.

These works have been carefully abridged from the author's larger manuals.

*CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND.* New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 1s. 6d.

"It is indeed the work of a scholar and divine, and as such, though extremely simple, it is also extremely instructive. There are few clergymen who would not find it useful in preparing candidates for Confirmation; and there are not a few who would find it useful to themselves as well."—LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

*A FIRST CLASS-BOOK OF THE CATECHISM OF THE CHURCH OF ENGLAND,* with Scripture Proofs, for Junior Classes and Schools. 18mo. 6d. New Edition.

**MACLEAR** *Continued—*

*A MANUAL OF INSTRUCTION FOR CONFIRMATION AND FIRST COMMUNION. WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS.* 32mo. cloth extra, red edges. 2s.

"It is earnest, orthodox, and affectionate in tone. The form of self-examination is particularly good."—JOHN BULL.

*THE ORDER OF CONFIRMATION, WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS.* 32mo. 6d.

*FIRST COMMUNION, WITH PRAYERS AND DEVOTIONS FOR THE NEWLY CONFIRMED.* 32mo. 6d.

**MAURICE**—*THE LORD'S PRAYER, THE CREED, AND THE COMMANDMENTS.* A Manual for Parents and Schoolmasters. To which is added the Order of the Scriptures. By the Rev. F. DENISON MAURICE, M.A. 18mo. cloth, limp. 1s.

**PROCTER**—*A HISTORY OF THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER*, with a Rationale of its Offices. By FRANCIS PROCTER, M.A. Thirteenth Edition, revised and enlarged. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

**PROCTER AND MACLEAR**—*AN ELEMENTARY INTRODUCTION TO THE BOOK OF COMMON PRAYER.* Re-arranged and supplemented by an Explanation of the Morning and Evening Prayer and the Litany. By the Rev. F. PROCTER and the Rev. Dr. MACLEAR. New and Enlarged Edition, containing the Communion Service and the Confirmation and Baptismal Offices. 18mo. 2s. 6d.

**PSALMS OF DAVID CHRONOLOGICALLY ARRANGED.** By Four Friends. An Amended Version, with Historical Introduction and Explanatory Notes. Second and Cheaper Edition, with Additions and Corrections. Crown 8vo. 8s. 6d.

"One of the most instructive and valuable books that has been published for many years."—SPECTATOR.

**RAMSAY**—*THE CATECHISER'S MANUAL*; or, the Church Catechism Illustrated and Explained, for the Use of Clergymen, Schoolmasters, and Teachers. By the Rev. ARTHUR RAMSAY, M.A. Second Edition. 18mo. 1s. 6d.



**SIMPSON**—*AN EPITOME OF THE HISTORY OF THE CHRISTIAN CHURCH.* By WILLIAM SIMPSON, M.A. Fifth Edition. Fcap. 8vo. 3s. 6d.

**SWAINSON**—*A HANDBOOK TO BUTLER'S ANALOGY.* By C. A. SWAINSON, D.D., Canon of Chichester. Crown 8vo. 1s. 6d.

**FRENCH**—*SYNONYMS OF THE NEW TESTAMENT.* By R. CHENEVIX TRENCH, D.D., Archbishop of Dublin. Eighth Edition, revised. 8vo. 12s.

**WESTCOTT**—Works by BROOKE FOSS WESTCOTT, D.D., Canon of Peterborough.

*A GENERAL SURVEY OF THE HISTORY OF THE CANON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT DURING THE FIRST FOUR CENTURIES.* Fourth Edition. With Preface on "Supernatural Religion." Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"As a theological work it is at once perfectly fair and impartial, and imbued with a thoroughly religious spirit; and as a manual it exhibits, in a lucid form and in a narrow compass, the results of extensive research and accurate thought. We cordially recommend it."—SATURDAY REVIEW.

*INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF THE FOUR GOSPELS.* Fifth Edition. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

"To learning and accuracy which commands respect and confidence, he unites what are not always to be found in union with these qualities, the no less valuable faculties of lucid arrangement and graceful and facile expression."—LONDON QUARTERLY REVIEW.

*THE BIBLE IN THE CHURCH.* A Popular Account of the Collection and Reception of the Holy Scriptures in the Christian Churches. New Edition. 18mo. cloth. 4s. 6d.

"We would recommend every one who loves and studies the Bible to read and ponder this exquisite little book. Mr. Westcott's account of the 'Canon' is *true history* in its highest sense."—LITERARY CHURCHMAN.

*THE GOSPEL OF THE RESURRECTION.* Thoughts on its Relation to Reason and History. New Edition. Crown 8vo. 6s.



**WILSON**—*THE BIBLE STUDENT'S GUIDE* to the more Correct Understanding of the English Translation of the Old Testament, by reference to the original Hebrew. By WILLIAM WILSON, D.D., Canon of Winchester, late Fellow of Queen's College, Oxford. Second Edition, carefully revised. 4to. cloth. 25s.

"For all earnest students of the Old Testament Scriptures it is a most valuable manual. Its arrangement is so simple that those who possess only their mother-tongue, if they will take a little pains, may employ it with great profit."—NONCONFORMIST.

**YONGE (CHARLOTTE M.)**—*SCRIPTURE READINGS FOR SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES*. By CHARLOTTE M. YONGE, Author of "The Heir of Redclyffe."

FIRST SERIES. GENESIS TO DEUTERONOMY. Globe 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, Second Edition, 3s. 6d.

SECOND SERIES. From JOSHUA to SOLOMON. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

THIRD SERIES. The KINGS and the PROPHETS. Extra fcap. 8vo. 1s. 6d. With Comments, 3s. 6d.

FOURTH SERIES. The GOSPEL TIMES. 1s. 6d. With Comments, extra fcap. 8vo., 3s. 6d.

FIFTH SERIES.

[*In the press.*]

Actual need has led the author to endeavour to prepare a reading book convenient for study with children, containing the very words of the Bible, with only a few expedient omissions, and arranged in Lessons of such length as by experience she has found to suit with children's ordinary power of accurate attentive interest. The verse form has been retained, because of its convenience for children reading in class, and as more resembling their Bibles; but the poetical portions have been given in their lines. When Psalms or portions from the Prophets illustrate or fall in with the narrative they are given in their chronological sequence. The Scripture portion, with a very few notes explanatory of mere words, is bound up apart, to be used by children, while the same is also supplied with a brief comment, the purpose of which is either to assist the teacher in explaining the lesson, or to be used by more advanced young people to whom it may not be possible to give access to the authorities whence it has been taken. Professor Huxley, at a meeting of the London School Board, particularly mentioned the selection made by Miss Yonge as an example of how selections might be made from the Bible for School Reading. See *TIMES*, March 30, 1871.

# MACMILLAN'S GLOBE LIBRARY.

Beautifully printed on toned paper, price 3s. 6d. each. Also kept in various morocco and calf bindings, at moderate prices.

The *Saturday Review* says :—"The Globe Editions are admirable for their scholarly editing, their typographical excellence, their compendious form, and their cheapness."

The *Daily Telegraph* calls it "a series yet unrivalled for its combination of excellence and cheapness."

*SHAKESPEARE'S COMPLETE WORKS.* Edited by W. G. CLARK, M.A., and W. ALDIS WRIGHT, M.A. With Glossary.

*MORTE D'ARTHUR.* Sir Thomas Malory's Book of King Arthur and of his Noble Knights of the Round Table. The Edition of Caxton, revised for Modern Use. With an Introduction, Notes, and Glossary, by Sir EDWARD STRACHEY.

*BURNS'S COMPLETE WORKS:* the Poems, Songs, and Letters. Edited, with Glossarial Index and Biographical Memoir, by ALEXANDER SMITH.

*ROBINSON CRUSOE.* Edited, after the Original Editions, with Biographical Introduction, by HENRY KINGSLEY.

*SCOTT'S POETICAL WORKS.* With Biographical and Critical Essay, by FRANCIS TURNER PALGRAVE.

*GOLDSMITH'S MISCELLANEOUS WORKS.* With Biographical Introduction by Professor MASSON.

*SPENSER'S COMPLETE WORKS.* Edited, with Glossary, by R. MORRIS, and Memoir by J. W. HALES.

*POPE'S POETICAL WORKS.* Edited, with Notes and Introductory Memoir, by Professor WARD.

*DRYDEN'S POETICAL WORKS.* Edited, with a Revised Text and Notes, by W. D. CHRISTIE, M.A., Trinity College, Cambridge.

*COWPER'S POETICAL WORKS.* Edited, with Notes and Biographical Introduction, by W. BENHAM.

*VIRGIL'S WORKS.* Rendered into English Prose. With Introductions, Notes, Analysis, and Index, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A.

*HORACE.* Rendered into English Prose. With running Analysis, Introduction, and Notes, by J. LONSDALE, M.A., and S. LEE, M.A.

*MILTON'S POETICAL WORKS.* Edited, with Introductions, &c., by Professor MASSON.

*Published every Thursday, price 4d.; Monthly Parts, 1s. 4d.  
and 1s. 8d., Half-Yearly Volumes, 10s. 6d.*

# NATURE:

*AN ILLUSTRATED JOURNAL OF SCIENCE.*

NATURE expounds in a popular and yet authentic manner, the GRAND RESULTS OF SCIENTIFIC RESEARCH, discussing the most recent scientific discoveries, and pointing out the bearing of Science upon civilisation and progress, and its claims to a more general recognition, as well to a higher place in the educational system of the country.

It contains original articles on all subjects within the domain of Science; Reviews setting forth the nature and value of recent Scientific Works; Correspondence Columns, forming a medium of Scientific discussion and of intercommunication among the most distinguished men of Science; Serial Columns, giving the gist of the most important papers appearing in Scientific Journals, both Home and Foreign; Transactions of the principal Scientific Societies and Academies of the World; Notes, &c.

In schools where Science is included in the regular course of studies, this paper will be most acceptable, as it tells what is doing in Science all over the world, is popular without lowering the standard of Science, and by it a vast amount of information is brought within a small compass, and students are directed to the best sources for what they need. The various questions connected with Science teaching in schools are also fully discussed, and the best methods of teaching are indicated.

NOW PUBLISHING IN MONTHLY PARTS, PRICE 1s. EACH.

# THE FORCES OF NATURE.

A POPULAR INTRODUCTION TO THE STUDY OF  
PHYSICAL PHENOMENA. By AMÉDÉE GUILLEMIN.

Translated from the French by Mrs. LOCKYER, and Edited,  
with Additions and Notes, by J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S.

ILLUSTRATED BY NEARLY FIVE HUNDRED ENGRAVINGS.

*To be completed in Eighteen Parts.*

ALSO IN ONE VOL. ROYAL 8VO, GILT, 21s.

The "Forces of Nature" has hitherto been accessible in England only in an expensive edition in one large volume. It appears to the publishers that by issuing it in monthly parts, at about half the original cost, they will bring it within the reach of a wider circle. They believe it is not too much to say that there is no work in the language from which the general reader can obtain a clearer view of the principles of physical science, and that it is as sound and accurate as it is popular. The number and beauty of the illustrations, and the lucidity of the style, have given it an enormous circulation in France, and two very large editions have been sold in England. The whole book has been thoroughly edited and adapted for the English public by Mr. J. NORMAN LOCKYER, F.R.S., whose name is a guarantee not only for the scientific accuracy, but for the completeness and lateness of the information.

The DAILY NEWS says:—"The method of pictorial illustration, accompanied as it is by descriptions of singular clearness, makes the experiments as easy to understand as though they were actually performed before the reader. There are 450 of these illustrations, all well executed, and so admirably fitted to the text as to make the book interesting to young people, while it is at the same time worthy of the notice of the student."

The SATURDAY REVIEW remarks:—"Altogether the work may be said to have no parallel, either in point of fulness or attraction, as a popular manual of physical science."

# THE FORCES OF NATURE.

A FIFTEEN MONTHS' STUDY IN THE PHYSICAL  
SCIENCE OF THE FORCES OF NATURE.  
BY J. H. MASON, F.R.S.  
AND J. H. MASON, F.R.S.

ILLUSTRATED BY HENRY COLEMAN, F.R.S.

LONDON: R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR, BREAD STREET HILL, E.C.

LONDON:

R. CLAY, SONS, AND TAYLOR,  
BREAD STREET HILL, E.C.

5

114497



